# Flight Instructor Course Handbook

**Volume 4: The Instrument Instructor & IRI Courses** 



A Study Guide by Steve Pells

**Optimised for iPad** 

# **Flight Instructor Course Handbook**

The following volumes are available:

**Volume 1: FI Course** 

**Volume 2: Single Engine CRI Course** 

**Volume 3: Multi Engine CRI Course** 

**Volume 4: Instrument Instructor & IRI Course** 

**Volume 5: Night Instructor Course** 

**Volume 6: FIC Preparation Course** 

**Volume 7: MCCI Course** 

**Volume 8: Aerobatics Instructor Course** 

**Volume 9: CPL Instructor Guidance** 

Written by Steve Pells and produced by SDP Aviation:

# sdpells@hotmail.com

+44 (0)7478 333367.

Please contact for details.

# **Contents**

# Abbreviations Introduction Overview

#### **Part 1: Instructor Certificates**

**Instructor Certificates** 

The Stand-Alone Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Certificate

The 'Add-On' Instrument Rating Instructor Certificate

#### **Part 2: Instructor Courses**

The Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Course

#### **Part 4: Student Ratings & Courses**

The Instrument Rating (IR)

**Modular Instrument Rating** 

Competency Based Instrument Rating (CB-IR)

Instrument Rating (Aeroplane) Skill Test

The UK IMC Rating (IRR) & Course

#### Part 5: Appendices

**Appendix 1: Instructional Techniques** 

**Appendix 2: Long Briefings** 

Appendix 3 Pre-Flight Briefings (Short Briefs)

Appendix 4: FIC Groundschool

**Appendix 5: Flight Training** 

Appendix 6a: Trainee needs

**Appendix 6b: Instructor Competencies** 

Appendix 7: CAA Forms & Documents

Appendix 10: Typical Instructor Assessments of Competence

# **Abbreviations**

(A)	Aeroplane	IFR	Instrument flight rules	SE	Single-engine or Senior Examiner
ACA	Asymmetric committal altitude	IMCR	UK IMC Rating	SEP	Single-engine piston
ACH	Asymmetric committal height	IMC	Instrument meteorological conditions	SFI	Synthetic flight instructor
AFM	Aeroplane flight manual	IR	Instrument rating	STI	Synthetic training instructor
AoC	Assessment of competence	IRE	Instrument rating examiner	SPA	Single pilot aeroplane
ATO	Approved training organisation	IRI	Instrument rating instructor	SPIC	Student pilot in command
CCC	Course completion certificate	IRR	IR renewal & revalidation examiner	SSEA	Simple single-engine aeroplane
CFI	Chief flying instructor	IR(R)	Instrument rating (Restricted)	SSR	Standard stall recovery
CPL	Commercial pilot's licence	LAPL	Light aircraft pilot's licence	TEM	Threat & error management
CRE	Class rating examiner	MCCI	Multi crew co-operation instructor	TK	Theoretical knowledge
CRI	Class rating instructor	ME	Multi-engine	TMG	Touring motor glider
CRM	Crew resource management	MEP	Multi-engine piston	TOC	Top of climb
CSU	Constant speed unit	MI	Mountain rating instructor	TOD	Top of descent
DTO	Designated training organisation	MP	Multi-pilot or Manifold pressure	TRI	Type rating instructor
EASA	European Union Aviation Safety Agency	MPL	Multi pilot licence	Ts & Ps	Temperatures and pressures
EFATO	Engine failure after take-off	Nm	Nautical mile	VAT	Threshold speed
FCL	Flight crew licencing	NPPL	UK national private pilot's licence	VFR	Visual flight rules
FE	Flight examiner	OEI	One engine inoperative	VMC	Visual meteorological conditions
FFS	Full flight simulator	P1	Pilot in command	Vmc	Minimum control speed
FI	Flight instructor	P1/s	Pilot in command under supervision	Vmca	Minimum control speed in the air
FI (R)	Restricted Flight instructor	PIC	Pilot in command	VP	Variable pitch
FIC	Flight instructor course	PICUS	Pilot in command under supervision	Vr	Rotate Speed
FICI	Flight instructor course instructor	PoH	Pilot's operating handbook	VREF	Final approach reference speed
FIE	Flight instructor examiner	PPL	Private pilot's licence	VS	Vertical speed
FNPT	Flight navigation procedures trainer	PuT	Pilot under training	VS1	Stall speed in a specific configuration
FT	Follow through	QXC	Qualifying cross country (defunct)	Vs0	Stall speed in landing configuration
FTI	Flight test instructor	ROC	Rate of climb	Vtoss	Take of safety speed
G/A	Go-around	ROD	Rate of descent	Vx	Best angle of climb speed
(H)	Helicopter	RTO	Rejected take-off	Vxse	Best angle of climb speed single engine
HDG	Heading	RW R/W	Runway	Vy	Best rate of climb speed
HoT	Head of Training	S&L	Straight and level	Vyse	Best rate of climb speed single engine

# Introduction

This document is designed to assist the trainee Instructor through his/her journey from qualified and proficient pilot, to an instructor (FI, CRI or IRI). It is also a useful study document for the FI(A) studying to become an FIC instructor.

It contains lots of background imformation and suggested briefs and Air Exercises. It is by no means the only way of achieving the qualification.

In this document, for ease of writing, the generic student is referred to as 'he'. This is not meant to imply that women cannot be taught to fly! It is just a recognition that by far the majority of flying students are male. In this document, the word 'he' should be taken to mean any student pilot (or instructor or examiner) of any gender, or no gender, or gender-fluid.

# **Overview**

The path from pilot to instructor is a journey. Long, and at times arduous, but worth the effort. Usually, before embarking on a journey, it is customary to know a bit about the destination.



In our case, the destination is an instructor certificate, either FI(h) or IRI. Before getting there it is worth knowing a bit about what it is we are aiming for.

What follows is a discussion about the various types of instructor certificate and the courses to which they relate.

Throughout this document, the terms **IMC Rating** and **IR(R)** are used interchangeably except with respect to its inclusion on a Part-FCL licence. Remember, an IRR with no brackets is something completely different!

Since the UK left EASA on 31 December 2020, things have changed. Initially much remains the same other than terminology. However, over time, it is expected that the information in this guide will become out of date. It is hoped to keep it revised as much as possible.

# **Part 1: Instructor Certificates**

The Stand-Alone Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Certificate
The 'Add-On' Instrument Rating Instructor Certificate

# **Instructor Certificates**

There are several different types of instructor certificate available. Subject to sucessful completion of an assessment of competence with a suitably qualified examiner, the CAA will issue an appropriate Flight Instructor Certificate. The various types are listed below:

IRI: Instrument rating Instructor – Allows the holder to instruct towards the issue of an EIR, IR or IR(R) in single engined aeroplanes unless the holder also has privileges to instruct for MEP. An IRI cannot instruct ab-initio students unless he also holds an FI certificate. If an IRI holder has the relevant aeroplane rating, then he may instruct on it towards the IRI as long as the student has a valid licence.

FI: Flight Instructor - Required for ab-initio training to LAPL or PPL standard and beyond. Instrument Instruction priveleges may be added.

The following will not be covered in this document.

CRI: Class Rating Instructor – Allows the holder to train pilots who already hold a licence, but does not permit ab-initio flight training. It Allows the holder to conduct training towards the issue of a class rating, refresher training, checkouts and differences/familiarisation training. It also allows the holder to train a LAPL holder for upgrade to a PPL.

Most of the different instructional privileges can be added to the CRI certificate except Instrument privileges (for which he can obtain a standalone IRI) or FIC privileges (the ability to teach flight instructor courses). The CRI cannot train towards the issue of a night rating (although this does not prevent him from instructing at night).

MI: Mountain Rating Instructor - Allows the holder to instruct towards the issue of a Mountain Rating

FTI: Flight Test Instructor

MCCI: Multi Crew Co-Operation Instructor – Allows the instructor to teach for multi crew operation in airliners, simulators etc

**SFI:** Synthetic Flight Instructor: Allows the holder to instruct in flight simulators for Single and Multi-Pilot aeroplanes.

**STI:** Synthetic Training Instructor - Allows the holder to instruct in flight simulators for the issue of a licence and for Single-Pilot aeroplanes.

**TRI:** Type Rating Instructor - Allows the holder to instruct towards the issue of a type rating for those aircraft which require one.

# **Routes to Obtaining Instrument Instructional Privileges**

There are 2 ways to gain privileges to teach for the IR or IMC Rating/IR(R). Either you can add it on to an existing FI certificate (as the letter h in brackets) or obtain a stand-alone IRI rating with no other instructor certificates held. Indeed, if the instructor is a restricted FI, an FI (LAPL only) or a CRI, this is the only way to obtain instrument instructional privileges, although he is exempted the 25 hrs Teaching & Learning Module. The instructor training course is the same for both routes.

# The 'Standalone' Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Certificate

#### **Pre-Entry Requirements**

No FI or CRI certificate is required, but if either are held, it reduces ground training requirements (25 hours teaching & learning), and if an FI is held, reduces flight training required (by 5 hours).

Before application to the CAA for an IRI certificate to teach on aeroplanes, the applicant must hold either an IR (SP or MP), IMC Rating/IR(R) or an EIR and have at least 800 hours of IFR flight time since issue of the IR etc (of which 50 may be approved simulator hours). 400 hours of the IFR time must be in aeroplanes.

Before application to the CAA for an IRI certificate to teach on FSTDs, the applicant must hold either an IR (SP or MP), IMC Rating/IR(R) or an EIR and have at least 200 hours of IFR flight time since issue of the IR etc of which 50 must be in aeroplanes.

The applicant may apply for the rating holding any kind of IR (for example a multi-crew IR such as a 737 pilot would have), but in order to teach single pilot IR, he must hold a valid single pilot IR.

To apply for an IRI for multi-engines aeroplanes, the applicantmust hold a CRI (ME).

#### **Course Details**

**Flight Training:** The IRI course consists of a minimum of 10 hours dual flight instruction (which may be reduced to 5 if an FI certificate (not CRI) is already held). The training must be conducted by a suitably qualified FICI (Flight Instructor Course Instructor) at an ATO.

A suggested breakdown is 5 hours of Basic Instrument Flight including full panel, limited panel Unusual Attitudes & navaid tracking, then 5 hrs of applied instrument flight concentrating on instrument approaches at airfields. This is obviously compressed if only 5 hours flight training is needed.

**Ground Training:** 35 hours of ground technical training including 25 hours Teaching & Learning, plus technical knowledge and lesson preparation. The 25 hours Teach & Learning is not required if other instructor certificates are held (FI, CRI, TRI, MCCI etc).

**NOTE:** It is possible to combine an IRI & CRI(ME) on 1 course, which then requires 10 hrs instrument flight, 5 hrs ME flight and 45 hrs groundschool. Similarly with CRI (SE) and IRI - 10 hrs instrument flight, 5 hrs SE flight and 45 hrs groundschool.

Assessment: After the course, the ATO shall complete an Instructor Course Completion Certificate CAA 5018.

There will be an assessment of competence with an FIE examiner at the end, which will consist of a long briefing, short briefing for an IR lesson. That lesson will then be taught in the air as well as other items determined by the examiner. There will follow a debrief on the examiner's performance. At some point, the examiner will assess the applicant's theoretical knowledge. Then the result will be given.

A standalone IRI is shown on the right:

Instructors	Remarks and Restrictions
F 7973	FCL.905.FI applies as in/(a)/(b)/(e)/(f)/(h)/(i)/(j)/FCL.945
IRI O	FCL.905.IRI(a) applies
ore the first	No Further Entries

**Validity:** Valid for 36 months plus the remainder of the month of test.

**Privileges:** The IRI is a single-engine privilege. The Standalone IRI holder may instruct pilots who already hold a licence, towards an IMC Rating/IR(R) or IR on single engine aeroplanes, unless that IRI holder also has multi-engine FI(h)/CRI (ME) privileges in which case they may instruct for MEP/IR. They may NOT instruct instrument flight to students who do not hold a valid licence unless an FI certificate is also held.

#### Revalidation

Within the 3 year validity period of the certificate, 2 out of the following 3 must be completed:

- Complete 50 hours flight instruction. If privileges for IR, rather than IMC Rating/IR(R) are sought, then 10 hours instrument instruction must be completed in the final 12 months of validity. If only IMC Rating/IR(R) instructional privileges are needed, then these 10 hours are not required. Hours flown as an examiner on flight tests counts as instructional hours for this purpose.
- Complete Instructor Refresher Training any time within the 3 year's validity. This used to be called an instructor seminar and is essentially the same a 2 day course with multiple attendees collaborating on lectures and briefings as well as presentations and study groups.
- Complete an assessment of competence with an FIE in the final 12 months of validity.
  - o **Note:** An assessment of competence with an FIE is required at least every other revalidation.

The 2 elements may be completed in any order.

#### Renewal

Both of the following must be completed:

- Complete Instructor Refresher Training any time within the 3 year's validity. This was previously called an Instructor Seminar and is essentially the same a 2 day course with multiple attendees collaborating on lectures, briefings as well as presentations and study groups.
- Complete an assessment of competence with an FIE.

Once qualified, the instructor will be an IRI with privileges to instruct towards the Instrument Rating. Unlike an FI, the IRI is **NOT** initially restricted to instructing under the supervision of another instructor.

Rating Certificate Endorsement	Date of Rating Test	Date of IR Test	Valid Until	Examiner's Certificate Number	Examiner's Signature
SEP (land)	N/A 150	N/A	30/09/2022		A0031
FI(A)	N/A	N/A	30/09/2024	CA	A0031 ation Authority
IRI(A) AND MOLLY	A NAD ALA	N/A N/A	31/01/2024	CA Civil Avia	A0031 tion Authority
MEPLLANDSP	09/09/2021	NA	30/11/2022	X C	J SHOOTE 3BR.345834
If st melse	NA	od offers	30/11/2012	I III A	HOOTER 345834B

An FI and an IRI need to be separately revalidated.

# The 'Add-On' Instrument Instructor Certificate FI(h)

# For the Add-On to an Existing FI Certificate:

#### **Pre-Entry Requirements**

The applicant must be an unrestricted FI, and hold either an IR (SP or MP), IMC Rating/IR(R) or EIR and have at least 200 hours of IFR flight time (of which 50 may be approved simulator hours). If the instructor only wishes to teach towards the UK IMC Rating/IR(R), then this 200 hours is not required, but the certificate will be restricted to teaching only towards the IMC Rating/IR(R). See CAA <u>Information Notice IN-2016-082</u>. Note that this Information Notice also requires the instructor to have CPL knowledge, so specifically excludes the FI (LAPL Only) holder. He must undertake a standalone IRI course to gain instrument instructional privileges.

The applicant may apply for the rating holding any kind of IR (for example a multi-crew IR such as a 737 pilot would have), but in order to teach single pilot IR, he must hold a valid single pilot IR.

#### **Course Details**

**Flight Training:** The add-on course consists of a minimum of 5 hours dual instruction (all of which may be in an approved simulator). The training must be conducted by a suitably qualified FICI at an ATO.

A suggested breakdown is 2 hours of Basic Instrument Flight including full panel, limited panel Unusual Attitudes and navaid tracking, then 3 hours of applied instrument flight concentrating on instrument approaches at airfields.

**Ground Training:** 10 hours of ground technical training including technical knowledge and lesson preparation.

**Assessment:** After the course, the ATO shall complete an Instructor Course Completion Certificate <a href="CAA 5018">CAA 5018</a>.

There will be an assessment of competence with an examiner at the end, which will consist of a long briefing, short briefing for an IR lesson. That lesson will then be taught in the air as well as other items determined by the examiner. There will follow a debrief on the examiner's performance. At some point, the examiner will assess the applicant's theoretical knowledge.

**Validity:** Validity runs concurrently with the FI certificate (36 months) since it forms part of the FI certificate.

**Privileges:** The Add-on Instrument FI holder may instruct pilots towards an IMC Rating/IR(R) or IR (unless restricted to IMC rating only) on single engine aeroplanes only, unless that FI holder also has multi-engine instructional privileges.

They may instruct ab-initio pilots who hold no licence.

Class/Type/IR	Remarks and Restrictions				
IR(Restricted)	Restricted to the privileges of the Instrument Meteorological Conditions Rating specified in the United Kingdom Air Navigation Order				
MEP (land)	SP				
Night	No Remark				
SEP (land)	No Remark				
	No Further Entries				
Instructors	Remarks and Restrictions				
FI	FCL.905.FI applies as in/(a)/(b)/(f)/(h)IRR/FCL.945				
	No Further Entries				
Examiners See Certificate Nu No Further Entrie	mber GBR, 123456A				

The privileges on the licence may be limited to instruct for the IR(R) only if the instructor does not meet the necessary experience for full IR instruction (eg lack of CPL knowledge or 200 hours IFR).

#### **Revalidation**

Revalidation is per the normal FI certificate revalidation:

Within the 3 year validity period of the certificate, 2 out of the following 3 must be completed:

- Complete 50 hours flight instruction. If privileges for IR rather than IR(R) are sought, then 10 hours instrument instruction must be completed in the final 12 months of validity. If only IR(R) instructional privileges are needed, then these 10 hours are not required. Hours flown as an examiner on flight tests counts as instructional hours for this purpose.
- Complete Instructor Refresher Training any time within the 3 year's validity. This used to be called an instructor seminar and is essentially the same a 2 day course with multiple attendees collaborating on lectures and briefings as well as presentations and study groups.
- Complete an assessment of competence with an FIE in the final 12 months of validity.
  - o **Note:** An assessment of competence with an FIE is required at least every other revalidation.

The 2 elements may be completed in any order.

#### Renewal

Renewal is per the normal FI certificate revalidation:

Both of the following must be completed:

- Complete Instructor Refresher Training any time within the 3 year's validity. This used to be called an instructor seminar and is essentially the same a 2 day course with multiple attendees collaborating on lectures and briefings as well as presentations and study groups.
- Complete an assessment of competence with an FIE.

# **Part 2: Instructor Courses**

# **The Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Course**

In order to keeps things simple, the term 'IRI Course' will be used to describe both courses: the standalone IRI course, and the addition of instrument instructional privileges to an FI certificate. The courses are the same.

# The Instrument Rating Instructor (IRI) Course

#### **Pre-Entry Requirements**

An instructor wishing to add applied instrument instruction privileges to an FI(A) certificate must be an unrestricted FI.

IRI (Standalone) COURSE PRE-ENTRY CHECKLIST						
Hold Relevant current aircraft class rating?	Expiry:					
Hold current Medical Certificate?	Expiry:					
Hold current IR(SP/MP) or IMCR/IR(R)?	Expiry:					
800 hours IFR (400 in aeroplanes) prior to application to CAA?	IFR:					

FI (h) Instrument Add-On COURSE PRE-ENTRY CHECKLIST					
Hold Unrestricted FI(A) Certificate?	Expiry				
Hold Relevant current aircraft class rating?	Expiry:				
Hold current Medical Certificate?	Expiry:				
Hold current IR(SP/MP) or IMCR/IR(R)?	Expiry:				
200 hours IFR (50 on aeroplanes) before application to the CAA? Unless	IFR:				
teaching for IMCR/IR(R) only.					

# **Course Details**

A typical course would consist of the following Syllabus:

# **COURSE OBJECTIVE**

To train pilots/flight instructors to the required level of skill & technical knowledge and develop instructional techniques needed to teach basic and applied instrument flying to the test standard so that a student may exercise safely the privileges of the rating (IR(R)/IMC Rating or IR: see below).

A successful candidate must have good knowledge of the IR & IMC Rating course entry requirements, the training syllabus (ground and air), the skill test/proficiency check formats and the rating privileges.

The Instrument rated instructor may then teach towards the issue of:

Instrument Rating (IR): Provided the instructor has at least 200 hours flight time in accordance with IFR (of which up to 50 hours may be in a flight simulator) and holds a current Instrument Rating (SPA), the instructor may give flight and ground training for the Full Instrument Rating. This will be checked on application to the CAA. If not achieved, the FI(h) will be annotated as IR(R) only. Once 200 hours IFR have been gained, re-application to the CAA is needed to remove this restriction.

**IR(R)/IMC Rating:** If an instructor wishes to teach for the IMC Rating/IR(R) only, then he is exempted the requirement for 200 hours IFR. He needs only 10 hours flight/approved simulator by reference to instruments only.

On successful completion of the course the applicant will be issued with an FI(h) rating permitting the holder to give ground and flight training for the IR(R)/IMC Rating only. His licence will be anotated as shown on the next page. Only up to 15 hours of the training he gives under this authority will be valid for subsequent upgrade of the IMC rating to a full IR or BIFM. This is an important point, since if the student later wishes to upgrade to a full IR, he will not be able to count more than 15 hours flown with any such instructor(s).

#### Instructors wishing to teach for the IMC/IR(R) Rating:

Paragraph (d) of Article 4 of the Aircrew Regulation requires that the CAA determines who may instruct for the IMC Rating/IR(R). This section provides clarification for instructors who wish to instruct for the IMC Rating /IR(R) and explains the instructor privileges that must be held. Part-FCL specifies the instructor certificates required to teach for the Instrument Rating. The following instructors are considered competent to deliver instruction for the IMC/ IR(R) Rating:

- a) The holder of a valid Part-FCL FI Certificate issued by the UK CAA who can teach for the IR (eg FCL.905.FI(h) is endorsed on their licence); or
- b) The holder of a valid Part-FCL IRI Certificate issued by the UK CAA. The instructors must also hold the appropriate aeroplane class rating. In addition, the CAA will authorise instructors to instruct for the IMCR/IR(R) if they comply with all of the following:
  - a) the instructor must hold a Part-FCL aeroplane licence issued by the UK CAA; and
  - b) the instructor must be an FI(A) without supervisory restriction applied, who is qualified to instruct for the single pilot class rating for the class of aeroplane which IR(R) instruction is to be conducted in; and
  - c) the instructor must hold a valid IR(R) rating or IR(A) (not EIR) on the Part-FCL licence; and
  - d) have passed all TK exams either for the issue of a CPL(A) or IRI(A), subject to the same time limitations stated in Part-FCL Annex I; and
  - e) the instructor must have completed at least 10 hrs flt time by sole reference to instruments in an aeroplane, FFS, FTD 2/3 or FNPT II; and
  - f) the instructor must have completed the course as specified in FCL.905.FI(h) as detailed in FCL.930.IRI; and
  - g) the instructor must pass an Assessment of Competence to instruct for the IR(R) with an FIE as specified in FCL.905.FI(h).

Note that the course specified in FCL.905.FI(h) may be completed for the purpose of qualifying to instruct for the IR(R) without having the prerequisite IFR experience for the issue of the FCL.905.FI(h) privileges.

To ensure that the UK is compliant with Article 4(d) of the Aircrew Regulation, it may be necessary for instructors who are teaching the IR(R) through compliance with the requirements above to have the authorisation to instruct included in their licence by the CAA. Instructors will need to apply for this using on-line form <a href="SRG 2159">SRG 2159</a> and pay the appropriate fee. Their Instructor Certificate will be endorsed with '(h)(IR(R))' in the Remarks and Restriction column against the entry for the FI(A) in Section XII of the licence.

Class/Type/IR	Remarks and Restrictions					
IR(Restricted)	Restricted to the privileges of the Instrument Meteorological Conditions Rating specified in the United Kingdom Air Navigation Order					
MEP (land)	SP					
Night	No Remark					
SEP (land)	No Remark					
	No Further Entries					
Instructors	Remarks and Restrictions					
FI	FCL.905.FI applies as in/(a)/(b)/(f)/(h)IRR/FCL.945					
	No Further Entries					
Examiners						
Sea Certificate Nu	mber GBR, 123456A					

Instructors qualified in accordance with these requirements above who wish to instruct for the Integrated IR, Modular IR, IR or the Competence Based Modular IR courses, may apply to have the instructor restriction lifted once they meet in full the prerequisite requirements of FCL.905.FI(h). A further application showing evidence of compliance with those requirements may be made using CAA on-line form <a href="SRG 2159">SRG 2159</a> and paying of the appropriate fee.

#### **FURTHER COURSE OBJECTIVES**

- 1. The IRI course should give particular stress to the role of the individual in relation to the importance of human factors in the man-machine environment. Special attention should be paid to the applicant's levels of maturity and judgement including an understanding of adults, their behavioural attitudes and variable levels of education.
- 2. With the exception of the section on Teaching and Learning, all the subject detail contained in the Ground and Flight Training Syllabus is complementary to the IR(R)/IMC Rating or Instrument Rating Pilot Course Syllabus which should already be known by the applicant. Therefore the objective of the course is to:
  - o Refresh and bring up to date the technical knowledge of the student instructor;
  - Enable the applicant to develop the necessary instructional techniques required for teaching of instrument flying, radio navigation and instrument procedures to the level required for the issue of an IR(R)/IMC or instrument rating; and
  - o Ensure that the student instrument rating instructor's flying is of a sufficiently high standard.
- 3. During the course, the applicants should be made aware of their own attitudes to the important aspect of flight safety. Improving safety awareness should be a fundamental objective throughout the course.
- 4. The holder of a FI (A) or CRI/TRI rating is exempted from Part One (Teaching and learning) from this course.

#### IRI COURSE DESCRIPTION

The course is to consist of: -

- A minimum of 10 hours dual instruction (5 if the applicant holds an FI certificate) divided into: (i) Basic IF (20%) & (ii) Applied IF (80%).
- A minimum of 10 hours ground technical training, together with 25 hours of teaching and learning (unless exempt by way of having completed the core course).

The recommended division is as follows:

- o Technical Subjects: 3 hours (including 1 hour practice in class)
- o Long briefings and pre-flight briefings: 4 hours (including 2 hours practice in class)
- o Internal progress tests: 3 hours
- o 25 hours Teaching and Learning if not already completed

## **Training Programme**

## **Ground Training: Syllabus**

The ground subjects covered below should be used to develop the instructor's teaching skills. The items selected should relate to the student's background and should be applied to training for an IR(A).

The course of training should cover the items listed below, but the applicant's aptitude and previous aviation experience should be taken into account when determining the amount of instructional time allotted. Although a number of items contained under this heading are complementary to those contained in the PPL/CPL/IR syllabi, the instructor should ensure that they have been covered during the applicant's training and due allowance should be made for the time needed to revise these items as necessary.

## **General Subjects**

Physiological/Psychological Factors: The Senses, Spatial Disorientation, Sensory Illusions, Stress.

<u>Flight Instruments:</u> ASI, Altimeter, VSI, AI, Heading Indicator/DI, Turn & Balance Indicator/TC, Magnetic Compass: Principles of Operation, Errors, In-flight Serviceability Checks, System Failures.

<u>Radio Navigation Aids:</u> Basic Radio Principles, Use of VHF, Morse Code, Principles of Radio Aids, Ground & Aeroplane Equipment, VOR, NDB/ADF, VHF/DF, RADAR, GPS/GNSS, Primary Radar, Secondary Surveillance Radar, Transponders, PAR, Other Nav Systems (RNP), DME, Marker Beacons, Pre-flight Checks, Range, Accuracy & Limitations of Equipment.

Aeronautical information publications: The AIP, NOTAMs, AICs, Information of an Operational Nature (eg RAIM).

<u>SERA, The Rules of the Air and Air Traffic Services:</u> VFR & IFR, Flight Plans & ATS Messages, Use of Radar in Air Traffic Services, Radio Failure. **Classification of Airspace:** Airspace Restrictions and Hazards.

<u>Holding and Approach Procedures:</u> Precision Approaches/Non Precision Approaches, APV (LPV), 2D & 3D Approach Operations, Radar Approach Procedures, Missed Approach Procedures, Visual Manoeuvring after an Instrument Approach, Conflict Hazards in Uncontrolled Airspace.

**Communications:** Types of Services, Extraction of AIP Data Relating to Radio Aids.

<u>Charts Available:</u> Various chart providers, En-route, Dep & Arrival, Instrument Approach & Landing, Amendments, Corrections & Revision Service.

# **Flight Planning General**

<u>The Objectives of Flight Planning:</u> Factors Affecting Aeroplane and Engine Performance, Selection of Alternate(s).

<u>Obtaining Meteorological Information:</u> Services Available, Met Briefing, TAFs, METARs & SIGMETs, Route Forecast, The Operational Significance of the Meteorological Information Obtained (including icing, Turbulence and Visibility).

Altimeter Considerations: Definitions &d understanding of Transition Altitude, Transition Level, Flight Level, QNH, Regional QNH, SPS, QFE.

Altimeter Setting Procedures: Pre-flight Altimeter Checks, Take off & Climb, En-Route, Approach & Landing, Missed Approach, Terrain Clearance.

Selection of a Minimum Safe En-Route Altitude: Instrument Flight Rules, Preparation of Charts, Choice of Routes and Flight Levels.

Compilation of Flight Plan/Log Sheet: Log Sheet Entries, Navaids to be used, Frequencies/Codings, Radials &d Bearings, Tracks & Fixes, Safety

Altitude(s), Fuel Calculations, ATC Frequencies, Tower, Approach, En-Route, Radar, FIS, ATIS, Weather Reports, Minimum Sector Altitudes En-Route at Destination/Alternate Aerodromes, Determination of MDH/MDA at Destination & Alternate Aerodromes inc. CDFA & non CDFA app minima.

<u>The Privileges Of The IMC Rating/Instrument Rating:</u> Outside Controlled Airspace, Within Controlled Airspace, Period of Validity and Renewal Procedures.

After the course, the ATO shall complete an Instructor Course Completion Certificate CAA 5018.

# **IRI Exercises**

Below are a number of lessons that may be taught on the IRI course. It not expected that all lessons will be used.

# **IRI Exercise 1: Basic Instrument Flying - Full Panel**

**AIM:** To learn how to teach a pilot to fly the aircraft safely on instruments.

# **IRI Long Briefing 1: Basic Instrument Flying**

#### Consideration on teaching the following:

**Physiological Considerations** 

Flight Instruments including Instrument Limitations & System Failures

Introducing Instrument Appreciation to the pilot

Attitude Instrument Flight: Pitch & Bank Indications- Different Instrument Presentations

Use of the AI: Pitch Attitude, Bank Attitude,

Maintenance of Heading and Balanced flight.

#### Take-Off

Transfer to Instruments after Take-off

#### **Attitude, Power & Performance:**

#### How to teach the following on full panel:

Attitude Instrument Flight

Control Instruments & Performance Instruments,

Effect of Changing Power and configuration

**Cross Checking Instrument Indications** 

Direct and Indirect Indications (Control vs Performance Instruments)

Instrument Lag,

Selective Radial Scan.

# **The Basic Flight Manoeuvres (Full Panel):**

## How to teach the following:

Straight & Level Flight at Various Airspeeds/Aeroplane Configs,

Climbing, Descending,

Standard Rate Turns -Level,

#### **Unusual Attitudes:**

Set-Up

Recovery: Remember the order of recovery: Throttle – Roll – Pitch (unless approaching the stall)

#### **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

#### **IRI Air Exercise 1:**

**AIM:** To learn how to teach a pilot to fly the aircraft safely on instruments.

#### <u>Taxying</u>

Importance of teaching Pre-flight instrument checks

#### **Demo of Disorientation/Physiological Sensations**

a) Straight and level. b) Student closes eyes and lowers head. c) Lower one wing and then raise the nose whilst positively rolling level. No power change. d) Student identifies turn in direction of wing first lowered. e) Repeat (a) and (b). f) Enter medium turn positively, g) Maintain positive back pressure, h) Reverse the turn gently, i) Student identifies - climbing turn in initial direction.

#### **Demonstration of Pitch indications**

- a) Visual straight and level Indication on AI
- b) Changes of attitude (visual) Indications on AI, Use of attitude bar or degrees of pitch on AI
- c) Visual turn Bank angle on AI, Attitude indication AI.

#### **Demonstration of Yaw indications**

- a) Straight and level Visual and AI
- b) Increase power-AI-wings level, Compass/heading indicator changing, Balance indicator yaw, Correction-balance-AI-heading indication-AI
- c) Decrease power as above.

#### **Performance instruments**

- a) Altimeter Setting procedure, Anticipation when changing altitude.
- b) Air Speed Indicator ASI Lag, Need to settle attitude before checking
- c) Vertical speed indicator (VSI) Lag, Reversal large attitude changes, Generally undamped, Time taken to stabilise after attitude change.

#### Straight climb and descents

- a) Climb Power full throttle, Attitude AI, Yaw balance indicator AI, Heading indicator AI, ASI AI VSI, AI adjust and hold, Repeat.
- b) Descents Power approach/low setting, as above.
- c) Levelling Anticipation (altimeter), Attitude –(hold), Power cruise (approximate), AI (check), Altimeter VSI, Repeat, Altimeter VSI.

## **Turning flight**

- a) Level turns Bank angle AI, Balance indicator, Pitch attitude AI, Altimeter AI VSI, Adjust and hold AI, Cross check balance AI Altimeter VSI (pitch and bank).
- b) Recovery Level attitude AI, Balance indicator, Altimeter, Adjust and hold AI, Altimeter AI VSI, AI.

#### **Specific Performance**

- a) All instruments Power, Attitudes select & hold, Performance Instruments: airspeed, VSI, altimeter, Adjust attitude power, Re-check performance
- b) Changed configuration As above but extending flaps and undercarriage.

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

# **IRI Exercise 2: Basic Instrument Flying - Limited Panel**

**AIM:** To learn how to teach a pilot to fly the aircraft safely on instruments in the event of failure of the Attitude and Heading Indicators.

# **IRI Long Briefing 2:**

How to teach the following on Limited Panel:

#### **Basic Flight Manoeuvres:**

Straight & Level at various speeds & configurations

Climbing & Descending

**Turning** 

Climbing & Descending Turns

# **Modified Scanning Technique**

Selective scanning technique using the Turn Indicator or turn co-ordinator for detecting yaw either because the rudder is not balanced or because the wings are not level.

Combination of altimeter, VSI and airspeed for the indirect interpretation of pitch attitude.

Basic scanning patterns and the combination of instruments to use during level flight, climbing, descending and turning.

Revision of characteristics and behaviour of the performance instruments; indirect indications of attitude:

#### **Unusual Attitudes:**

Setup

Recovery: Remember the order of recovery: Throttle – Roll – Pitch.

#### **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

#### **General Notes**

Limited panel instrument flying should be introduced early in the instrument training phase of the course and should be practised concurrently with full panel training. In this way the students' general level of instrument flying competence and the confidence is increased and the exercise does not assume an importance out of proportion to its difficulty.

Since in this exercise the aircraft is controlled by reference to the performance instruments (the control instruments being assumed to have malfunctioned) it is important that the student is aware of the limitations and possible erroneous indications of the performance instruments as demonstrated in the previous Exercise.

**NOTE:** The term 'partial panel' has a different meaning and should not be used in this context.

#### **IRI Air Exercise 2:**

#### **During Flight**

Attitude Interpretation using the Performance Instruments (limited panel)

#### **Level Flight, Climbing and Descending**

**Changing Speed and Configuration:** Exercise to practise instrument scan and co-ordination of controls.

<u>Compass/Timed Turns:</u> Both types of turn at standard rate onto specified headings; correction of residual errors after completion of initial turn.

**Unusual attitude recoveries:** Practice limited panel recoveries visually. Remember the order of recovery: Throttle – Roll – Pitch.

#### **Steep turns**

- a) Full panel entry. (i) Gentle application of bank balance power. (ii) Attitude and bank angle AI. (iii) Height altimeter, VSI
- b) Full panel recovery. (i) Gentle roll out AI balance power. (ii) Att for level flight AI, balance, heading indicator. (iii) Ht check altimeter, VSI
- c) Partial panel entry. (i) Gentle application of bank turn indicator balance. (ii) Power increased on entry. (iii) Turn indicator to maintain bank
- d) Partial panel recovery. (i) Level wings turn indicator. (ii) Balance power reduced. (iii) Height check altimeter VSI.

#### Approach to the stall

Recoveries from level flight and other attitudes and conditions:-

- a) Instrument indications of approaching stall: (i)Low airspeed, (ii) Loss of height, (iii) Stall warning
- b) Recovery full panel: (i) Attitude selection AI, (ii) Power full, (iii) Direction heading indicator, (iv) Balance.
- c) Recovery limited panel: (i) Attitude for level flight ASI-ALT-VSI, (ii) Power–full, (iii) Level wings TC, (iv) Balance, (v) Level flight, VSI.

**Note:** Excessive attitude corrections can cause VSI reversal.

#### **Straight Dive**

- a) Recovery visual: (i) Power reduced, (ii) Check wings level, (iii) Return to level flight.
- b) Recovery full panel :(i) Power reduced, (ii) Check wings level AI, (iii) Select level attitude, VSI, (iv) Check level, Altimeter, VSI, (v) Check direction AI, heading indicator
- c) Recovery limited panel: (i) Power reduced, (ii) Wings level turn indicator, balance, (iii) Pitch up until IAS checks hold ignore turn indicator during pitch, (iv) Lateral level turn indicator, balance, (v) Level attitude altimeter, ASI, VSI, (vi) Direction balance, turn indicator, (vii) Adjust as necessary.

#### **Spiral Dive**

- a) Recovery visual: (i) Wings must be levelled before pitch up or spiral tightens.
- b) Recovery full panel: (i) Pwr reduced, (ii) Wings level AI, (iii) Select level att, VSI, (iv) Check level, Altimeter, VSI, (v) Check direction AI, DI.
- c) Recovery partial panel: (i) Pwr reduced, (ii) Wings level turn indicator avoid back pressure balance, (iii) Pitch up until airspeed checks hold ignore DI during pitch, (iv) Lateral level turn indicator, balance, (v) Level atti altimeter, ASI, VSI, (vi) Direction balance, turn indicator, (vii) Adjust as necessary.

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

# **IRI Exercise 3 Instrument Flying: Navigation Aids**

## **IRI Long Briefing 3:**

#### 3a: VOR Radio Navigation:

Availability of VOR Stations En-Route, VOR Frequencies & Ident, Signal Range, Effect of Altitude, VOR Radials, Use of OBS & HSI, To/From Indicator, Orientation, Selecting Radials, Intercepting Pre-Selected Radial, Assessment of Distance to Interception, Effects of Wind, Maintaining a Radial, Tracking To/From a VOR, Procedure Turns, Station Passage, Use of 2 Stations for Obtaining a Fix, Assessment of GS and ETA, Holding & Entries, Communications.

# 3b: ADF/NDB Radio Navigation:

Availability of NDB Facilities En-Route, Location, Frequencies, Tuning and Identification Codes, Signal Reception Range, Static Interference, Night Effect, Station Interference, Mountain Effect, Coastal Refraction, Orientation in Relation to a NDB, Homing, RBI vs RMI, Intercepting a Pre-Selected Magnetic Bearing and Tracking inbound, Station Passage, Tracking Outbound, Time/Distance Checks, Use of Two NDBs to Obtain a Fix or use of one NDB and another Navaid, Holding Procedures, Various Approved Entries, Communication (R/T Procedures and ATC Liaison).

#### 3c: GNSS/GPS Radio Navigation:

RAIM checks,

**Specific to GNSS system available:** Power up, keys & knobs, Screen layout, cursors & frequency selection, Page selection 5 groups: NAV, WPT, AUX, NRST & FPL, Direct to Navigation & other features, Map page, Flight plan page, Approaches & missed approaches.

#### 3d: DME:

Availability of DME Facilities, Location, Frequencies & Identification (higher pitch to DME ident, and less frequent), Signal Reception Range, Slant Range, Use of DME to obtain Distance, GS & time to Run, Use of DME to obtain a Fix.

#### 3e: Transponders (SSR):

Operation of Transponders - Modes

Code Selection Procedure: Emergency Codes, Frequency Monitoring Codes.

#### 3f: En-route Radar:

Availability of Radar Services, Location, Station Frequencies, Call Signs and Hours of Operation, AIP and NOTAMs, Provision of Service (Basic, Traffic, Deconfliction, Procedural, Radar Control), Communication (R/T, Procedures and ATC Liaison), Emergency Service, Aircraft Separation Standards.

#### VHF/DF (VHF Direction Finding): (Optional)

Discussion of lack of DF stations. Availability of VHF/DF Facilities En-Route, Location, Frequencies, Station Call Signs and Hours of Operation, Signal and Reception Range, Effect of Attitude, Communication (R/T Procedures and ATC Liaison), Obtaining and using types of bearings, e.g. QTE, QDM, and QDR, Homing to a Station. Effect of Wind, Use of Two VHF/DF Stations to Obtain a Fix (or One VHF/DF Station and another Navaid), Assessment of Ground speed and ETAs.

#### **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

#### **IRI Air Exercise 3:**

#### **Radio Instrument Tracking**

#### How to teach a pilot the following:

#### **VOR:**

To ensure that the navaid is idented every time.

To position fix in conjunction with a DME or with 2 VORs

To track towards a VOR station along a specified radial.

To track away from VOR station along a specified radial.

To intercept a given radial to or from a VOR.

#### NDB:

To ensure that the navaid is idented every time.

To position fix in conjunction with DME

To track towards an NDB station along a specified track.

To track away from an NDB station along a specified track.

To intercept a given track to or from an NDB.

#### **GNSS/GPS**:

Setup of specific GPS receiver, Direct To Navigation, Use of various pages in flight

#### DME:

To ensure that the navaid is idented every time. To use the DME in conjunction with other navaids.

#### **Transponder:**

Use of particular model. Ground check of output altitude/FL.

#### **En-Route Radar:**

**RT & Services available** 

#### **VDF** (If available):

RT & Method of use.

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

## **General Notes**

#### **Radio Instrument Tracking**

Accurate radio instrument tracking forms the basis of all procedural instrument flying so time spent in thoroughly learning this aspect of instrument flying will be invaluable to the student. The aim must be to start the student off with very basic rule of thumb procedures building up to a mental picture of the position of the aircraft in relation to the radio facility.

The trainee instructor should understand and be able to teach the concept of Max Drift.

# IRI Exercise 4 Instrument Flying: Pre-Flight & Instrument Departure

## IRI Long Briefing 4: Pre-Flight & Departure

#### To discuss how to teach the following:

Choice of route & destination for training,

Filing of Flight Plans,

Serviceability of the Aeroplane. Radio & Radio Navigation equipment installed, Displays

Loading of Instrument departures into the GPS

Departure Clearances,

Set up of Navaids prior to departure, Taxy Instrument checks,

Departure Procedures & SIDs,

Frequency Changes,

Altitude and Position Reporting,

**Obstacle Clearance Considerations** 

Transition to IMC/Simulated IMC

#### **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

## **IRI Air Exercise 4: Instrument Departure:**

#### **Instrument Checks**

Pre-flight check of all flight instruments and radio navigation equipment using checklists. Taxy Instrument Checks.

#### **Instrument Departure:**

Radio Instrument Tracking: VOR, ADF & GPS/GNSS

- a) Navaid tuning and identification. DOC from AIP
- b) Interception angle range
- c) Effect of wind
- d) Scan pattern
- e) Maintaining track needle indication
- f) Calculation of magnetic heading (RBI)
- g) Assessment of wind direction
- h) Avoidance of ADF/VOR Needle chasing and homing
- i) ADF Needle dip
- j) Navaid station passage
- k) Loading & Checking of RNAV SIDs
- I) Tracking RNAV SIDs

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

# IRI Exercise 5: En-Route, Holding & ILS 3D Approach Operations

## **IRI Long Briefing 5:**

To discuss how to teach the following:

Choice of route & destination for training,

Radio & Radio Navigation equipment installed, Displays

Airways Clearances & RT Procedures

Set up of Navaids en-route

Descent planning

STARs & arrival procedures

Hold entry, flying the hold. Adjusting the hold.

Selection & Interpretation of Approach chart

Selection & Identification of navaids

Selection & loading of procedures from GPS

Aircraft Configuration changes

Lateral & Vertical Navigation

Timing & Distance checks

Determination of minima. Execution of go-around.

Missed approach procedure.

## **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

#### **General Notes**

- This phase of the instrument flying training introduces all the procedural flying which the student will meet in subsequent commercial operations. It also equips the student with the necessary skills to pass the CAA IMC Rating Test or Instrument Rating Test.
- It is assumed that the student has achieved a satisfactory standard of instrument flying before any procedures are introduced. The instructor should always be prepared to revise basic IF techniques if problems are encountered.

#### **Radio Instrument Tracking**

Accurate radio instrument tracking forms the basis of all procedural instrument flying so time spent in thoroughly learning this aspect of instrument flying will be invaluable to the student. The aim must be to start the student off with very basic rule of thumb procedures building up to a mental picture of the position of the aircraft in relation to the radio facility.

The trainee instructor should understand and be able to teach the concept of Max Drift.

#### **IRI Air Exercise 5:**

# **Holding procedures**

Hold Joining: a) Assess entry sector – use aircraft heading. b) Assess wind effect: timing & drift. c) Beacon passage - turn, time, talk

**Hold Timing:** a) Overhead abeam, wings level whichever latest, b) QDR 1 minute +/- 1 sec per knot head/tailwind.

**Hold Tracking:** a) Outbound leg 3 x drift (2x drift within 60° of wind), b) Check gate on outbound leg, d) Intercept inbound QDM - single drift.

**Subsequent holds:** a) Timing errors - divide by 2 and apply outbound, b) Tracking errors - adjust drift outbound.

# **Instrument Landing System (ILS)**

#### Localiser (LOC):

a) Check tuning & ident of ILS

b) Approach chart selection & interpretation

c) Calculate Decision Height/Attitude or use chart minima

d) Calculate drift as applicable

e) Calculate timing from marker to threshold or as regd

f) Use of heading bug

g) Localiser intercept angle - LOC active - turn on

h) R/T phraseology

i) Final checks

j) Scan patternk) Track adjustments on the ILS - small corrections

I) Scan pattern

m) Final Approach Point (FAP) Time - Track - R/T call

n) Time elapsed - missed approach or land

## Glideslope (G/S):

a) Calculate rate of descent - use chart or GS readout

d) LOC established. Coinsider configuration change

c) G/P + 1 dot prepare for descent

d) G/S central - configuration - attitude for descent

e) Know target rate of descent

f) Scan pattern

g) Final checks

h) Maintain G/S - small pitch attitude changes

i) Airspeed - power as required

j) FAP/SDF - Check height/altitude - Maintain G/S - R/T call

k) DH/A + 50 feet - prepare for missed approach

I) DH/A visual - maintain attitude - final checks - land

m) DH/A - no visual - missed approach

# **Missed Approach:**

a) Full Power (or as required)

b) Level wings

c) Select Climbing attitude

d) Configuration changes as needed

e) Maintain track or turn as required

f) Settled in climb - R/T call

g) Follow chart

h) After take-off checks

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

# IRI Exercise 6: VOR, NDB & RNP 2D & 3D Approach Operations

## IRI Long Briefing 6: Non-Precision Approach Procedures & 2D Approach Operations

Non-Precision Approach Charts,

Initial Approach to the IAF and Minimum Sector Altitude,

ATC Liaison, Communication (ATC Procedures and R/T Phraseology),

Approach Planning,

Holding,

The Approach Track,

Mental Picture of the Approach,

Initial Approach Procedure,

AOM,

Completion of Approach Planning,

Achieving the Horizontal and Vertical Patterns,

Assessment of Distance, GS, Time, and ROD from the (FAF) to the Aerodrome,

CDFA. Stabilised approach criteria,

Approach ban,

Use of DME,

Go around and Missed Approach Procedure, Published MISAP,

Transition from Instrument to Visual Flight (Sensory Illusions),

Visual Manoeuvring after an Instrument Approach, Circling Approach, Visual Approach to Landing.

### **Common Student Errors:**

A discussion of common student errors.

#### **General Notes**

- This phase of the instrument flying training introduces all the procedural flying which the student will meet in subsequent commercial operations. It also equips the student with the necessary skills to pass the CAA IMC Rating Test or Instrument Rating Test.
- It is assumed that the student has achieved a satisfactory standard of instrument flying before any procedures are introduced. The instructor should always be prepared to revise basic IF techniques if problems are encountered.

#### **Radio Instrument Tracking**

Accurate radio instrument tracking forms the basis of all procedural instrument flying so time spent in thoroughly learning this aspect of instrument flying will be invaluable to the student. The aim must be to start the student off with very basic rule of thumb procedures building up to a mental picture of the position of the aircraft in relation to the radio facility.

The trainee instructor should understand and be able to teach the concept of Max Drift.

#### **IRI Air Exercise 6:**

#### **Teaching the NDB or VOR Approach**

- (a) Check Navaid tuning, Ident & setup
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA/MDA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Descent with procedure

#### **Teaching the 2D RNP Approach**

- (a) Load & check procedure
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA/MDA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Descent with procedure

#### **Teaching the 3D RNP Approach**

- (a) Load & check procedure
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Intercept Glidepath using Vertical Deviation Indicator

#### **Common Student Errors:**

Instructor-led in flight demonstration of common student errors.

- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitudes against chart
- (k) Beacon passage (if applicable)
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA/MDA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach.
- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitudes against chart distance every mile or as published
- (k) Approach Status Annunciation by FAF Announce 'LNAV' etc
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA/MDA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach. SUSP
- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitude against chart at FAF
- (k) Approach Status Annunciation by FAF Announce 'LPV' etc
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach. SUSP

# <u>Extra IRI Lesson – Your Student's Pre-Test Paperwork</u> <u>Practical Considerations</u>

As an instructor, it is a very important part of your student's training, that you ensure his paperwork is ready for the examiner. Few examiners have the patience to wait while badly completed forms are filled out or corrected.

# **The Course Completion Certificate**

The examiner will need to see a correctly completed and signed course completion certificate. For the initial Instrument Rating, form <u>CAA 5011</u> is used.

CAA's online a		f evidence in support of an application ed the form should be scanned or pho the CAA.	
FALSE REPRESEN	NTATION STATEMENT		
		make, with intent to deceive, any false re	presentation for the purpose of procuring the gran
issue, renewal or	r variation of any certificate, licence, a	approval, permission or other document.	This offence is punishable on summary conviction I
a fine and on cor	nviction on indictment with an unlimit	ted fine or imprisonment or both.	70.FG 70.5
1. APPLICANT DE	ETAILS		
CAA Personal Re	ference number (if known):	Date of Birth: 21/05/2001	
Title: Mr	Forename: John	Surname: Walke	Pr
	OF INSTRUMENT RATING AND COUR		Complete as applicable
	completed a full approved course of tr		
		of training for the Instrument Rating base	ed on:
	L or BIFM Certificate held in the same		
	lots licence with Instrument Rating in		****
		rument Rating in the same category as app	blied for
	ler the published UK Armed Forces, M		
TO 51 30			ours of flight time under IFR as PIC on aeroplanes a
		quate level of Theoretical Knowledge.	
		ICAO Instrument Rating with at least 50 h	ours of flight time under IFR as PIC on aeroplanes a
	tical Knowledge exams.		
The pilot has c	completed a full Competency Based In	strument Rating (CB IR) approved course.	
The pilot has c The pilot has c	completed a full Competency Based Incompleted a reduced Competency Bas	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co	urse with a credit based on instrument flight
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provid	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR.	urse with a credit based on instrument flight
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provid The pilot has c	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas led by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co	
The pilot has control that the pilot has construction provided the pilot has control that the pilot has control the pilot has control that the pilot has control the pilot has cont	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based led by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Base, under a rating providing the privilege	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC.	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provide The pilot has c IC on aeroplanes The pilot has c	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas i, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Bas	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC.	urse with a credit based on instrument flight
The pilot has control to the pilot has construction provided The pilot has control to the pilot has control th	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an Fi(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas to, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Bas ction other than above.	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has control to the pilot has construction provided The pilot has control to the pilot has control th	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas s, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Bas	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has control to the pilot has construction provided The pilot has control to the pilot has control th	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an Fi(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas to, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Bas ction other than above.	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC. sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provid. The pilot has c IC on aeroplanes The pilot has c mee under instructions the b	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an Fi(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas to, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Bas ction other than above.	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. our provide the IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR IR and IR IR IR approved co est to If younder IFR and IR IR IR approved co credit (If applicable):	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provid. The pilot has c IC on aeroplanes The pilot has c mee under instructions the b	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas i, under a rating providing the privilego completed a reduced Competency Bas ction other than above. asis on which you are requesting the of a competency Bas ction other than above.	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. our provide the IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR IR and IR IR IR approved co est to If younder IFR and IR IR IR approved co credit (If applicable):	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has c The pilot has c struction provid. The pilot has c If t	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Bas ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) holding the completed a reduced Competency Bas i, under a rating providing the privilego completed a reduced Competency Bas ction other than above. asis on which you are requesting the of a competency Bas ction other than above.	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilege to provide training for the IR. our provide the IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR and IR IR IR and IR IR IR approved co est to If younder IFR and IR IR IR approved co credit (If applicable):	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a
The pilot has c The pilot has c Istruction provid The pilot has c C on aeroplanes The pilot has c C on aeroplanes The pilot has c In pilot has c The pilot has	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Base ed by an IRI(A) or an FI(A) hothing the completed a reduced Competency Base, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Base ction other than above. asis on which you are requesting the competency asis on which you are requesting the competency which you are requesting the competency and the province of the province which you are requesting the competency which you are requesting which you are	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co privilinge to provide training for the IR. de distrument Rating (CB IR) approved co es to fly under IFR and in IMC. sed instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co credit (If applicable):	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh
The pilot has c The pilot has c The pilot has c The pilot has c C on aeroplanes The pilot has c me under instruce ase state the b  CONFIRMATIO	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based on the properties of the pro	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved copyrivinges to provide training for the IR.  ed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coes to fly under IFR and in IMC.  sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocredit (if applicable):  To be completed by the J  Helicopters	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin
The pilot has c The pilot has	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based of by an IRI(A) oxiding the completed a reduced Competency Base, under a rating providing the privilege completed a reduced Competency Basettion other than above.  asis on which you are requesting the completed a reduced Competency Basettion other than above.  IN OF THEORETICAL COURSE COMPLETE.  Aeroplanes I	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- providege to provide training for the IR.  privilege to provide training for the IR.  set of Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- sto fly under IFR and in IMC.  sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- credit (If applicable):  To be completed by the /  Helicopters   ATP   90	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin
The pilot has co The pi	completed a full Competency Based Incompleted a reduced Competency Based Incompleted Incomple	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved corprivinges to provide training for the IR.  or privinges to provide training for the IR.  sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocording instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocording (If applicable):  To be completed by the I  Helicopters  ATP  90  Inours), re taken. UK CAA	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin
The pilot has control that the pilot has control	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based on by an IRI(A) pointing the completed a reduced Competency Base, under a rating providing the completed a reduced Competency Based in the complete in the competency Based	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- privivilege to provide training for the IR.  set of Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- es to fly under IFR and in IMC. seed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved co- credit (If applicable):  To be completed by the J  Helicopters  ATP  90  (hours). re taken. UK CAA copy of ATO approval certificate (If ATO a	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin  Airships   CB IR   CB IR
The pilot has co The pi	completed a full Competency Based Incompleted a reduced Competency Based Incompleted Incomple	ret land ment Rating (CB IR) approved copyrivinges to provide training for the IR.  red instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coes to fly under IFR and in IMC.  seed instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocredit (if applicable):  To be completed by the IMED COMPANY C	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin  Airships   CB IR   CB IR
The pilot has control that the pilot has control	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based on the properties of based in the properties and the properties of the provided with application and the provided with application and the provided seemed to be provided with application and the provided (see to one)	retainment Rating (CB IR) approved copyrivinges to provide training for the IR.  red instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coes to fly under IFR and in IMC.  seed instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocredit (if applicable):  To be completed by the A  Helicopters   Aury  90 hours,  retaken UK CAA  copy of ATO approval certificate (if ATO a	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge training Airships  CB IR
The pilot has co The pi	completed a full Competency Based Incompleted a reduced Competency Based Incompleted	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coprivinges to provide training for the IR.  red Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coes to fly under IFR and in IMC.  sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocredit (If applicable):  To be completed by the A  Helicopters  ATP   90	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge training Airships  CB IR
The pilot has co The pi	completed a full Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based In completed a reduced Competency Based of by an IRI(A) polding the completed a reduced Competency Based In Comp	sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coprivinges to provide training for the IR.  red Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved coes to fly under IFR and in IMC.  sed Instrument Rating (CB IR) approved cocredit (If applicable):  To be completed by the A  Helicopters  ATP   90	urse with a credit based on instrument flight urse with a credit based on instrument flight time a urse with a credit based on having instrument fligh  ATO who conducted Theoretical Knowledge trainin Airships  CB IR   und the examinations not approved by the UKCAA

	TING COURSE CERTIFICATE		To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name) John \	Walker h	as satisfactorily met the pre-requisite r	equirements in accordance with Part-FCL
		mpleted a training for the grant of an In	
I further certify that I have exa	mined the applicants flying logbook	(s) and that the entries in them meet in	n full the flying experience requirements for
he grant of an instrument rati	ng in accordance with Part-FCL.		
Date IR course commenced:	23/11/2023	Date IR course completed:	16/02/2024
	n from UK CAA to conduct a reduce	d course (if applicable):	
The course consisted of:			
Aeroplanes			
	ight instruction in a single engine ae		
hours dual instrument fli	ight instruction in a multi engine ae	roplanes	
Helicopters			
hours dual instrument fl	ight instruction in a single engine he	elicopters	
hours dual instrument fl	ight instruction in a multi engine he	licopters	
Airships			
hours dual instrument fl	ight instruction		
Simulator experience (if applie	cable)		
O hours instrument ground	d time in a FTD 2/3 or FNPT I	NPT II/III Flight Simulator	
FSTD Identification Number of			ued in accordance with the Aircrew regulatio
Competent Authority issuing C	Qualification Certificate for the simu	lator	The same of the sa
Night Rating held: Yes			
			8/02/2024
		-9	
5. FLYING CREDITS - CBIR ON			To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name)John !	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instru	To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name)John.! logbook to confirm that the a	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instru complete as applicable):	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the
I certify that (name)John.! logbook to confirm that the a Has completed 42 hours fi	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instru complete as applicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the
I certify that (name) John.! logbook to confirm that the a Has completed <b>42</b> hours fi Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 as	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instru complete as applicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission
I certify that (name)John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed 42 hours fl Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 as las completed0 hours un	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instru complete as applicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ cttion Aa, 6(a) rred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i)	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission
I certify that (name) John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed .42 hours fi Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 as Has completed0 hours un Has completed0 hours ins	Walker	nas received a reduced course of instruc- complete as applicable): VMC in aer oplanes provided by an IRI/ ction Aa, 6(a) rered in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission
I certify that (name)John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed .42 hours fl Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at Has completed hours un Has completed hours ins Has completed hours flig	Walker  pplicant hold the following credits ( light instruction under IFR in IMC or a samended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refe strument flight instruction in aeropla ght time under IFR as PIC on aeropla	nas received a reduced course of instruc- complete as applicable): VMC in aer oplanes provided by an IRI/ ction Aa, 6(a) rered in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission (B) & (6)(b)(1)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$2 hours fil Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at Has completed .0 hours un Has completed .0 hours instance that completed .0 hours must has completed .0 hours must have completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours due that	Walker  pplicant hold the following credits ( light instruction under IFR in IMC or a samended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refe strument flight instruction in aeropla ght time under IFR as PIC on aeropla	has received a reduced course of instructomplete as applicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ tion Aa, [6] rrred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above innes (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only)	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission (B) & (6)(b)(1)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$2 hours fil Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at Has completed .0 hours un Has completed .0 hours instance that completed .0 hours must has completed .0 hours must have completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours filights completed .0 hours due that	Walker  pplicant hold the following credit;  pplicant hold the following credit;  pikh instruction under IFR in IMC or  s amended, Annex I, Appendix 6, Set der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refe  strument flight instruction in aeropl.  pik time under IFR as PIC on aeropla  al instrument instruction in a multi-  pik time under IFR time as PIC on mender  pikt time under	has received a reduced course of instructomplete as applicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ tion Aa, [6] rrred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above innes (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only)	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission (B) & (6)(b)(1)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$. hours fix Regulation (EU) \$1178/2011 at Has completed \$0\$. hours in Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours did Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$.	Walker  pplicant hold the following credity ty pplicant hold the following credity ty pplicant instruction under IFR in IMC or s amended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refe strument flight instruction in aeropl, ght time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multi- the time under IFR time as PIC on m  No  No	has received a reduced course of instruction as a spelicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ction Aa, 6(a) rrred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above nies (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only ulti-engine aeroplanes	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission (B) & (6)(b)(1)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$. hours fix Regulation (EU) \$1178/2011 at Has completed \$0\$. hours in Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours did Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$.	Walker  pplicant hold the following credity ty pplicant hold the following credity ty pplicant instruction under IFR in IMC or s amended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refe strument flight instruction in aeropl, ght time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multi- the time under IFR time as PIC on m  No  No	has received a reduced course of instruction as a spelicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ction Aa, 6(a) rrred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above nies (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only ulti-engine aeroplanes	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$. hours fix Regulation (EU) \$1178/2011 at Has completed \$0\$. hours in Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$. hours did Has completed \$0\$. hours flights completed \$0\$.	Walker  applicant hold the following credit is giptin instruction under IFR in IMC or a mended, Annex I, Appendix 6, Sed der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as referstrument flight instruction in a eroplicate time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multi-thickness with time under IFR time as PIC on more than a multi-thickness with time and time time a multi-thickness with time and	has received a reduced course of instruction as a spelicable): VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ction Aa, 6(a) rrred in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above nies (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only ulti-engine aeroplanes	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$, hours fix Regulation (EU) \$178/2011 as that completed \$0\$, hours unit has completed \$0\$, hours flix \$180 \text{mours of the completed }0\$, hours of the comple	Walker  applicant hold the following credits (sphit instruction under IFR in IMC or samended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See doer IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refetstrument flight instruction in aeroplash time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multi-gibt time under IFR time as PIC on m  No  No  ATO Issuing A  ATO Issuing A	has received a reduced course of instruction (and instruction Aa, 6 a). VMC in aer oplanes provided by an IRI/VMC in aer oplanes provided by an IRI/VMC in aer oplanes provided by an IRI/VMC in an aer other than specified above anes (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only ulti-engine aeroplanes.  Ig School Authority: UMC CAA Signature: INC CAA Signature: INC CAA Signature: INC CAA Date: 11	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)  )  B/02/2024  To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed 42 hours fill Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at thas completed . D hours in thas completed . D hours sing thas completed . D hours fill thas completed . D hours fill that completed .	Walker  applicant hold the following credits is gipth instruction under IFR in IMC or a mended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refestrument flight instruction in aeropla gibts time under IFR as PIC on aeroplash instrument instruction in a multiplication of the properties of	has received a reduced course of instruction plete as applicable):  VMC in aeroplanes provided by an IRI/ tion Aa, 6(a)  rered in Commission Regulation (6)(a)(i) anes other than specified above ines (multi-engine IR only) engine aeroplane (multi-engine IR only ulti-engine aeroplanes  ing School  Luthority: UK CAA  Signature: Luth Casa  Signature: Lut	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the FI(A) in accordance with Commission (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$, hours fix Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at Has completed \$\frac{9}{2}\$, hours fix As completed \$\frac{9}{2}\$, hours fix \$	Walker  applicant hold the following credits is applicant hold the following credits in the control of the cont	has received a reduced course of instruction (and instruc	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)  )  B/02/2024  To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed #2 hours fill Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at thas completed .0 hours on thas completed .0 hours sin thas completed .0 hours fill has completed .0 hours fill Night Rating held: Yes 19 Name of Approved Training O. ATO number .0666 ATO number .0666 ATO number .0666 ATO on a completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all applice PLOS .0 hours fill have the second completed for all have the second completed for t	Walker  applicant hold the following credit is applicant hold the following credit is gipth instruction under IFR in IMC or a amended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplames as refer strument flight instruction in a multight time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multight time under IFR time as PIC on many No  No  ATO issuing A labort Kestrel Flyin Labort Kestrel  atoms, with the exception of those third country ICAO licence and instruction Kestrel  actions, with the exception of those third country ICAO licence and instruction is a made by (Name). Algenon Kes	has received a reduced course of instruction (and instruc	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)  )  B/02/2024  To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$\frac{92}{2}\$, hours fix Regulation (EU) 1178/2011 at Has completed \$\frac{9}{2}\$, hours fix As completed \$\frac{9}{2}\$, hours fix \$	Walker  pplicant hold the following credits (sphit instruction under IFR in IMC or samended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See dear IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refetertrument flight instruction in aeroplant in the under IFR as PIC on aeroplant in the under IFR as PIC on aeroplant instrument instruction in a multiple time under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on more plant in the under IFR time as PIC on the under IFR	has received a reduced course of instruction (and instruc	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)  )  B/02/2024  To be completed by the ATO
I certify that (name). John logbook to confirm that the a Has completed \$2_*\$ hours fix Regulation (EU) \$178/2011 at Has completed \$0_*\$ hours instance of the second of t	Walker  pplicant hold the following credits's in pipelicant hold the following credits's gipth instruction under IFR in IMC or a samended, Annex I, Appendix 6, See der IFR as PIC on aeroplanes as refutiment flight instruction in a multi-gibt time under IFR as PIC on aeropla al instrument instruction in a multi-gibt time under IFR time as PIC on m  No  Toganisation (ATO): Kestrel Flyin ATO issuing AT	has received a reduced course of instruction (and instruc	To be completed by the ATO ment training and I have checked the  FI(A) in accordance with Commission  (B) & (6)(b)(i)(B)  )  8/02/2024  To be completed by the ATO least 50 hours of flight time under IFR as

Form CA45011, Issue 03, January 2021 Page 1 of 2 Form CA45011, Issue 03, January 2021 Page 2

#### For an IR renewal or revalidation **SRG 1107** is used:

# Course Completion Certificate for issue, revalidation, renewal or variation of a Single or Multi-Pilot Type/Class Rating or the renewal of an Instrument Rating



This form is intended for use in the provision of evidence in support of an application made to the CAA using the CAA's online application service. Once completed the form should be scanned or photographed and uploaded by the applicant as part of an online application to the CAA.

#### FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT

It is an offence under the UK Air Navigation Order to make, with intent to deceive, any false representation for the purpose of procuring the grant, issue, revalidation, renewal or variation of any certificate, licence, approval, permission or other document. This offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine and on conviction on indictment with an unlimited fine or imprisonment or both.

1 COURSE/TRAINING COMPLETION CERTIF	CATE		lf a se	To be		by the Train		A Company of the Comp
I certify that (name) John Walker							6 3	-
Date of Birth 13/07/1999 has s								-
		1	rum g m u	conduite with rare	Ter for the	ronowing.		
Type/Class Rating and/or Instru	ment Rating							
Date Training commenced:	05/01/2	024	Date Tra	aining completed:	05/0:	1/2024		
Aircraft Type/Class name (including variants	MEP (lar	nd) Be-76	38: 					
Training completed (select one):  Initial Type/O	lass Rating Re	fresher Training	<b>1</b>	No Refresher Train required	ing	Extend priv class/type r instrument	ating a	
The course consisted of		0						
II/III or FTD 2/3 or FFS. FSTD Identification N UK (EU) Regulation no. 1178/2011) (Please a	umber of device use	d		(which must be issue	STANDARD CO. HOLD		FINELL	DI FINE
Competent Authority issuing qualification co	rtificate for the devi	ice.:						
Please specify a specific instrument rating tr	aining hour separate	ely from the type	/class ratin	g training hours				
(For MEP only) hours of dual fli	ght instruction in en	ngine failure proc	edures and	l asymmetric flight to	echniques.			
Flight Details (if applicable*):								
Aircraft Registration:	Nı	umber of take-of	fs and land	ings:				***
Base training Instructor name:			Lice	nce number:				
Authorising Competent Authority:								
The oretical Knowledge Training (if applicab	e*):							
Theoretical knowledge examination pass ma	rk (%): Date:							
The applicant has completed a reduced cour	se of training.	Please state the	basis for th	is and provide a deta	ailed explan	ation (if app	olicable	):
Recommended for Skill Test or Proficiency	Check by:							
Name: Algenon Kestrel	Positio	n: Instructo	or	Lice	nce No:1	L23456A		
Approved Training Organisation Details:								
Approved Training Organisation (ATO)/Decla	red Training Organis	sation (DTO)	Kestrel F	lying School				
ATO/DTO number: 0666	ATO/D	TO issuing Autho	ority: UK	CAA				.,
Name of Head of Training (or authorized sign	atory**): Hubert	t Kestrel		Position:	CFI/Ho	Τ		
Signature of Head of Training or authorized		agos	9	,			2024	

SRG1107 v9 April 2023

For the IMC Rating, form <a>CAA</a> 5019</a> is used. The same form is used for initial, revalidation and renewal.

Instrument Meteorological Con	ditions Rating/Instrument Ratir	ng	3. FLIGHT TEST			To be completed by U	JK IRE/CRE/FE holding the c	correct course approval
(Restricted) Course Completion			I hereby certify t	hat the applicant (name)	James Walker	hass	satisfactorily passed a flight	test for the grant of a
						Rating (Restricted) in accordance		test for the grant or a
For pilots holding UK issued Part-FCL o	or UK ANO licences aeroplane only	Civil Aviation Authority	Date of flight	letter ological conditions	Aircraft type:	totals (restricted) in determine	Aircraft registration:	
This form is intended for use in the provision of ex	vidence in support of an application made to the Co	AA using the	test:	08/02/2024	Anciarctype	PA-28	Anciale registration.	G-BOOF
CAA's online application service. Once completed	the form should be scanned or photographed and	uploaded by	Name of UK	500 10 0000	62	UK Examiners number:	(0.000000000000000000000000000000000000	(-
the applicant as part of an online application to the	ne CAA.		examiner:	Rachel Kestr	el		227452G	
FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT				· ·			de la companya de la	
It is an offence under the UK Air Navigation Order to ma	ake, with intent to deceive, any false representation for the	he purpose of procuring the grant,	4. CREDITS			To be completed by t	JK ATO/DTO/IRI/FI holding	the record consent
issue, renewal or variation of any certificate, licence, app	proval, permission or other document. This offence is pur	nishable on summary conviction by	I certify that (nar	n a l	harras	eived a reduced course of instr		
a fine and on conviction on indictment with an unlimited	fine or imprisonment or both.	(3)		lds a valid single pilot ICA	THE RESERVE THE PROPERTY OF THE PERSON	ewed a reduced course or mistr	unent meteorological traini	ing due to the following.
					21, 2020			
1. APPLICANT DETAILS  CAA Personal Reference number (if known): 2   3   7	03/10/2002			ed to hold a single pilot I	CAO IR(A)			
	Surname: Walker		The pilot ho	lds a UK Military IR(A)				
Title: Mr Forename: James	Surname: Walker		The pilot pr	eviously held a UK Militar	y Green IR(A)			
2. IMC RATING COURSE DETAILS	To be completed by UV ATO/DTO/IDI/IDE/CDE/EI	and in a the course course	The pilot pr	eviously held a UK Militar	y Amber IR(A)			
2. INIC RATING COURSE DETAILS	To be completed by UK ATO/DTO/IRI/IRE/CRE/FI h approval	lolding the correct course	The pilot pr	eviously held a UK Militar	y White IR(A)			
I certify that (name)James Walker	has satisfactorily met the pre-requisite rec	quirements in accordance with	The pilot ha	s qualified for the AOPA	Ground Instructors certi	ficate		
	f training and has a satisfactorily completed a course of tr	raining for the grant of the UK	The pilot ho	lds a valid UK CAA issued	PPL(H)			
Instrument Meteorological Conditions or Instrumen	nt Rating (Restricted) 🗸 (annotate as appropriate)			lds a Part-FCL PPL(H) nigh				
I further certify that I have examined the applicants flying	g logbook(s) and the entries in them meet in full the flying	g experience requirements for the						
grant of an Instrument Meteorological Conditions or Inst	rument Rating (Restricted) in accordance with CAP 804 or	r Part-FCL.		s qualified for the AOPA				
FRTOL held: Yes 🗸	No			y further relevant inforn				
Date IMC/IR(R) course commenced: 19/12/202	3 Date IMC/IR(R) course completed:	05/02/2024	Total Control of the			the application for the Instrum		
Course completed for the purpose of (select one):	Initial Issue V Revalidation	Renewal		completed and submitte		e application being processed.	if applying on the basis of	TUK Military credits the
			2007.00-00000000000000000000000000000000					
2.1 IMC/IR(R) RATING COURSE DETAILS	To be completed by UK ATO/DTO/IRI/IRE/CRE/FI	adding the correct course	100 Del 100 Miles (100	d is for (select one or bot	and the state of t	neoretical knowledge exam	Flight Training	
2.1 INC/INK/ KATING COOKSE DETAILS	approval	rolang the correct course	82.82	oved Training Organisation		Flying School		
The course consisted of:			UK ATO number:			ng Authority: UK CAA	ter.	
Aeroplane experience (initial issue only)			Name of Head of	Training: Hubert Kes	strei	Signature:		Date: 09/02/2024
The pilot has completed a full UK approved course of trai	ining for the Instrument Meteorological Conditions and/o	r Instrument Rating (Restricted):						
21 hours dual instruction 16 hours solo referen	ce to instruments							
The pilot has completed training as required for the Instr	rument Meteorological Conditions and/or Instrument Rati	ing (Restricted) with a valid						
UK Flight Instructor in accordance with Part-FCL FCL.905. Yes No	FI(h IRR):							
Please specify training completed:								
UK Flight Instructor certificate/licence number:								
Simulator experience (if applicable)		20 10						
O hours instrument ground time in a (select one):	FTD 2/3 of FNPT I FNPT II/III Flight	Simulator						
FSTD Identification number of simulator used (if applicab	ole):							
Competent Authority issuing qualification certificate for	the simulator (if applicable):							
Name of UK Training Organisation (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):							
IMC/IR(R) ground examination (if applicable)								
Theoretical knowledge examination passed on: 02/01	/2024 Paper set no: 0214	Pass mark: 92%						
Theoretical knowledge assessed by (examiner name):	Anne Kestrel Examiner number: 145345	V	CAASO10 Issue 2	April 2023				Page 2 of

Page 2 of 2

All course completion certificates must be signed by the CFI or Head of training of the ATO.

CAA5019 Issue 2, April 2023

# Part 4: Student Ratings & Courses

**The PPL Course** 

**PPL Course Lessons** 

**The Instrument Rating (IR)** 

**Modular Instrument Rating** 

**Competency Based Instrument Rating (CB-IR)** 

**Instrument Rating (Aeroplane) Skill Test** 

The UK IMC Rating/IR(R) & Course

# **Competency Based Instrument Rating (CB-IR & CBM-IR)**

#### Note:

There is some confusion over the use of the term CB-IR within the CAA and general pilot community:

- The CAA tend to use the term CB-IR to mean a foreign based pilot who wishes to use his previous experience to apply for a UK IR.
- The CAA use the term CBM-IR for a UK licensed pilot who wishes to use his previous intrument traing as a basis for upgrade to an IR.

However, even within the CAA documentation, the term CB-IR may be used to describe the second situation. In this document, we will distinguish by using the term – Foreign IR holder CB-IR for the first case.

# **Foreign IR Holder CB-IR**

# **Pre-Entry Requirements:**

The applicant for a Foreign IR holder CB-IR must have:

- A UK PPL(A) with FRTOL, a CPL(A) or an ATPL(A) in current flying practice
- An ICAO third country Instrument rating (eg USA FAA IR)
- An appropriate medical certificate (Class 1 or 2 as needed).
- The class or type rating for the aircraft on which the skill test is to be undertaken, eg SEP (land) or MEP (land).
- There is no requirement for the foreign IR holder to carry out any training or attend an ATO (however it may be a good idea). No course completion certificate will be required.
- Have logged at least 50 hours PI IFR (not necessarily IMC) flight time on the foreign IR.
- For multi-engine, single pilot IR, at least 15 hours of the 50 hour requirement for Pilot in Command under IFR must have been flown in a multi engine aeroplane.

Foreign CB-IR COURSE PRE-ENTRY CHECKLIST	
Hold UK PPL(A) with FRTOL, CPL(A) or ATPL (A)	Туре:
Hold Relevant current aircraft class rating?	Expiry:
Hold current Medical Certificate?	Expiry:
Hold current Foreign IR?	Country: Expiry:
SE: Have logged at least 50 hours PIC IFR (not IMC)?	Hours?
ME: As above but at least 15 hours in ME aircraft P1 IFR	Hours?

## **Ground & Flight Training**

None required.

## **Assessment**

The Foreign rated pilot must pass an initial IR(A) skill test with an IRE assigned by the CAA. The IRE will orally assess the pilot's knowledge of UK procedures and air law during the skill test. This may be a long session of oral questions.

The skill test must be booked and paid for using the CAA on-line form <u>SRG2153</u>. Subsequent IR revalidations and renewals may be by an IRE or IRR (Instrument rating renewal examiner). See the later chapter.

# **Application:**

When applying on the basis of a Third country ICAO licence conversion, the pilot will need to provide:

- On-line form <a href="SRG 2142">SRG 2142</a> (Verification of a third country ICAO licence and or TK examination results)
- A certified copy of the third country ICAO licence, validating medical certificate and certificate of revalidation. If the ICAO licence does not show the validity dates of ratings, submit certified copies of logbook pages showing the rating validity and test dates.

## Validity

The validity period of an IR (however gained) is 12 months plus the remainder of the month of test.

# **Competency Based Modular Instrument Rating (CBM-IR)**

## **Pre-Entry Requirements**

The applicant for a CBM-IR must have:

- A PPL(A) with FRTOL or a CPL(A)
- An appropriate medical certificate (Class 1 or 2 as needed).
- The class or type rating for the aircraft on which training is to be undertaken, eg SEP (land) or MEP (land).
- At least 80 hours of theoretical knowledge instuction for IR(A) at an ATO.
- Passed at least the IR theoretical knowledge examinations in accordance with FCL.615 IR.
- The instrument flight instruction and the IR(A) skill test shall be completed within the period of validity (36 months) of the pass of the theoretical knowledge examinations in accordance with FCL.025.
- To determine the number of hours credited, and to establish the training needs, the candidate shall complete a pre-entry assessment (AMC7, Appendix 6 to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011) at an ATO. The content and duration of the pre-entry assessment shall be determined by the ATO based on the prior instrument experience of the candidate (see note).
- Note: Refer to CAP 804 and Appendix 6 to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 for credits.

CBM-IR COURSE PRE-ENTRY CHECKLIST		
Hold PPL(A) with FRTOL or CPL(A)	Type:	
Hold Relevant current aircraft class rating?	Expiry:	
Hold current Medical Certificate?	Expiry:	
Passed IR or ATPL TK Exams	Expiry:	
Previous Instrument Instruction (up to 15 with IMC Rating only instructor)	Hours:	
P1 IFR Experience?	IFR:	

#### **Ground Training**

An approved competency-based modular IR(A) course shall comprise at least 80 hours of theoretical knowledge instruction. The theoretical knowledge course may contain computer-based training and e-learning elements. A minimum amount of classroom teaching as required by ORA.ATO.305 has to be provided (not be less than 10% of the total duration of the course).

Pass the following theoretical knowledge examinations:

Air Law Aircraft General Knowledge – Instrumentation Flight Planning and Monitoring Human Performance Meteorology Radio Navigation Communications

A pass in a theoretical knowledge examination paper will be awarded to a candidate achieving at least 75% of the marks allocated to that paper. There is no penalty marking. After successful completion of the theoretical knowledge examinations, they will be valid for the issue of a IR(A) for a period of 36 months.

# **Flight Training**

**PRE-ENTRY ASSESSMENT:** The applicant for a CBM-IR shall undergo a pre-entry assessment. The content and duration of the pre-entry assessment shall be determined by the ATO based on the prior instrument experience of the applicant.

**NOTE:** The term 'instrument flight time under instruction' in Part FCL terminology refers to that time by which the pilot controls the aircraft by sole refernce to the instruments. That is, time under the hood only, not chock to chock.

Please note that there is no credit for UK Military pilots for the CBM-IR modular route at present, and therefore only the credits agreed in the Military Accreditation Scheme (MAS) apply for the issue of an IR.

The applicant for a CBM-IR must have completed at least the following:

#### Single-Engine CBM-IR

- Minimum 40 hours total instrument instruction\* time (some may be in an approved simulator). A max of 30 hours prior instrument instruction\* or PIC IFR time may be counted towards this 40 hr total if the applicant holds/held a suitable rating (ie IMCR or foreign IR)
- Minimum 10 hours instrument instruction\* time in an aeroplane at an ATO.
- Minimum 25 hours dual instrument instruction\* as a minimum.

#### **Multi-Engine CBM-IR**

- Minimum 45 hours total instrument instruction time\* (some may be in an approved simulator). Also a max of 35 hours prior instrument instruction\* or PIC IFR time may be counted towards this 45 hr total if the applicant holds/held a suitable rating (ie IRR or foreign IR)
- Minimum 10 hours instrument instruction\* time in an aeroplane at an ATO.
- Minimum 25 hours dual instrument instruction\* as a minimum of which at least 15 hours must be in a multi-engined aeroplane.
- A pilot who holds a SE IR needs a minimum of 5 hrs multi-engine instrument training.

Note: The completion of any such instrument flight instruction shall be documented in a specific training record and signed by the instructor.

NB: If the student has passed only the CB-IR(A) theoretical knowledge exams, he will be granted an IR(A) on his licence with a restriction - he will not be certified to exercise IR privileges on single-pilot high-performance aircraft. If he has passed the full IR(A) or ATPL(A) theoretical knowledge exams, he will be granted an IR on his licence with no restrictions and will, therefore, hold a full single-pilot multi/single-engine instrument rating.

**NOTE:** The minimum hours requirements is for instrument time under instruction as specified in **CAP 804**. As such this can not include any taxi time in either the simulator or aircraft. Only instruction time by sole reference to instruments is to be used.

<sup>\*</sup>Note: Only a maximum of 15 hours prior instruction by instructors limited to teach for the IMC Rating only, may be counted towards a competency based IR.

# Single engine IR to Multi-engine IR Upgrade

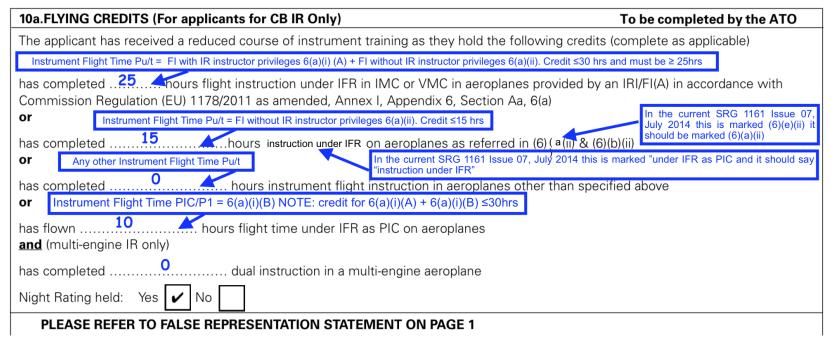
A course of at least 5 hours instruction in instrument flying in multi engine aeroplanes, of which up to 3 hours may be in a FFS or FNPT II. The IR test is then considered an Initial IR test and must be booked with the CAA and paid for on-line.

# **Instrument Rating (Aeroplane) Skill Test**

The initial IR Skill test is conducted by an Instrument Rating Examiner (IRE) nominated by the CAA. The skill test must be booked and paid for using the CAA on-line form <a href="SRG2153">SRG2153</a>. Subsequent IR revalidations and renewals may be by an IRE or IRR (Instrument rating renewal examiner). See the later chapter.

# **Application**

Once the skill test is passed, the rating must be applied for via <u>SRG1161</u>. For the CBM-IR it can be awkward working out which hours to put in which box, since the form is really designed for the modular IR.



### Validity

The validity period of an IR (however gained) is 12 months plus the remainder of the month of test.

### Revalidation

An IR(A) may be revalidated within the 3 months immediately preceding the expiry date of the rating without losing the original expiry date..

If candidates choose to fulfil the revalidation requirements earlier than prescribed above, the new validity period shall commence from the date of the IR(A) proficiency check extended to the end of the month plus rating validity period.

The applicant must hold the relevant class or type rating, unless the IR(A) revalidation is combined with the renewal/revalidation of the relevant class or type rating.

Candidates who fail to pass the IR(A) proficiency check before the expiry date of the IR shall not exercise the IR(A) privileges until they have passed the IR(A) proficiency check.

An FNPT II or full flight simulator representing the relevant class or type of aeroplane may be used to revalidate an IR(A) as a stand-alone event, i.e. when not combined with a class or type rating. Class ratings for single pilot aeroplanes cannot be renewed or revalidated in a simulator.

At least each alternate IR(A) proficiency check shall be performed in an aeroplane.

The initial IR Skill test is conducted by an Instrument Rating Examiner (IRE) nominated by the CAA. Subsequent IR renewals and revalidations may be by an IRE or IRR (Instrument Rating Renewal examiner). The applicant may choose his own examiner.

An IR(A) may be revalidated as part of a combined type rating skill test or proficiency check in an appropriately qualified full flight simulator. This is usually for airliners and high performance aircraft since Class ratings for single pilot aeroplanes cannot be renewed or revalidated in a simulator.

An IR may be revalidated as part of a combined class rating skill test or proficiency check in an aeroplane. E.g. MEP/IR combined test.

### Renewal

If an IR has expired, in order to renew their privileges candidates shall:

- Go through refresher training at an ATO to reach the level of proficiency needed to pass IR test. This will require the issue of a Course Completion Certificate (SRG1107) which may state that no training is required.
- Complete an IR proficiency check in the relevant aircraft category with an IRE or IRR Examiner.
- Hold the relevant class or type rating, unless the IR renewal is combined with the renewal of the relevant class or type rating.
- IR renewals may be by an IRE or IRR (Instrument rating renewal examiner). The applicant may choose his examiner.

An IR may be renewed as part of a combined type rating skill test or proficiency check in an appropriately qualified full flight simulator. This is usually for airliners and high performance aircraft since Class ratings for single pilot aeroplanes cannot be renewed or revalidated in a simulator. An IR may be renewed as part of a combined class rating skill test or proficiency check in an aeroplane. E.g. MEP/IR combined test.

# **7 Year Expiry Period**

If the IR has not been revalidated or renewed within the preceding 7 years, the holder will be required to pass again the IR theoretical knowledge exams and the skill test. The 7 year period commences from the date the IR expired (see note).

**Note:** The IR expiry date refers to any type of IR (SPA or MPA) held by a pilot on an ICAO pilot licence e.g. Hong Kong CPL(A) with A330/IR or helicopter IR. Providing the pilot keeps this licence and rating valid the 7 year period is kept at bay. If however the A330/IR expires the 7 year period would commence from that expiry date.

### **Privileges**

The privileges of a holder of an IR(A) are to fly aircraft under IFR, including PBN operations, with a minimum decision height of no less than 200 feet (60 m).

Holders of an IR(A) shall exercise their privileges in accordance with the conditions established in Appendix 8 to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

If an IR holder does not hold a night qualification, then the IR will be issued and restricted to day use only:

XII	Ratings	Ratings, certificates and privileges						
Class/Type/IR		Remarks and Restrictions						
Instrument		CB IR/Day only/SE Only						
IR(Restricted)		Restricted to the privileges of the Instrument Meteorological Conditions Rating specified in the United Kingdom Air Navigation Order						
SEP (land)		No Remark						
-	11 de 1	No Further Entries						
Instructors		Remarks and Restrictions						
No En	tries							
Exam	iners							
No En	tries							

**NB:** If the student has passed only the CB-IR(A) theoretical knowledge exams, he will be granted an IR(A) on his licence with a restriction - CB-IR (as shown above). He will not be certified to exercise IR privileges on single-pilot high-performance aircraft. If he has passed the full IR(A) or ATPL(A) theoretical knowledge exams, he will be granted an IR on his licence with no restrictions and will, therefore, hold a full single-pilot multi/single-engine instrument rating.

# **Discussion Topics**

For guidance during training and assessment

- IFR & VFR Regulations IFR Rules
- Choice of approach charts UK CAA, NavBlue, Jeppesen
- Aerodrome Operating Minima inc visibility Take-Off Minima, Take-Off Alternate, Approach Ban, OCH, MDA, Vis minima/RVR, Lighting failures, approved autopilot. Factored RVR,
- Filing of flight plans ICAO form, Internet interfaces
- Pre-departure IFR clearances Expected format
- SIDs & STARs Chart study
- MSAs MSA, Local MSA, MEA, MOCA, TAA. Temp correction.
- En-Route Charts Choice of vendor. Routings
- PANS-OPS IAC rules
- Holding Detailed study
- Procedure Turns 45 degree.
- ILS Approaches

- LOC Approaches
- VOR & VOR/DME Approaches
- NDB & NDB/DME Approaches
- RNP Approaches (3D & 2D) SBAS, Temperature correction,
- SRA Approaches RT
- PAR Approaches RT
- VDF Approaches
- DME Arc Procedures
- Go-Around & Missed Approach
- Limited Panel Ops General handling, timed compass turns
- Unusual Attitudes Full and limited panel
- Circling Approaches Minima, missed approach
- CDFA & Non-CDFA Profiles Calc of profile, visibility penalty

# **Modular Instrument Rating**

# IR(A) — Modular flying training course (From CAP 804)

#### **GENERAL**

The aim of the IR(A) modular flying training course is to train pilots to the level of proficiency necessary to operate aeroplanes under IFR and in IMC. The course consists of two modules, which may be taken separately or combined:

### (a) Basic Instrument Flight Module (BIFM)

This comprises 10 hours of instrument time under instruction, of which up to 5 hours can be instrument ground time in a BITD, FNPT I or II, or an FFS. Upon completion of the Basic Instrument Flight Module, the candidate shall be issued a Course Completion Certificate (BIFM certificate).

### (b) Procedural Instrument Flight Module

This comprises the remainder of the training syllabus for the IR(A), 40 hours single engine or 45 hours multi-engine instrument time under instruction, and the theoretical knowledge course for the IR(A).

An applicant for a modular IR(A) course shall be the holder of a PPL(A) or a CPL(A).

An applicant for the Procedural Instrument Flight Module, who does not hold a CPL(A), shall hold a Course Completion Certificate for the BIFM. The ATO shall ensure that the applicant for a multi-engine IR(A) course who has not held a multi-engine aeroplane class or type rating has received the multi-engine training specified in Subpart H prior to commencing the flight training for the IR(A) course.

An applicant wishing to undertake the Procedural Instrument Flight Module of a modular IR(A) course shall be required to complete all the instructional stages in one continuous approved course of training. Prior to commencing the Procedural Instrument Flight Module, the ATO shall ensure the competence of the applicant in basic instrument flying skills. Refresher training shall be given as required.

The course of theoretical instruction shall be completed within 18 months.

The Procedural Instrument Flight Module and the skill test shall be completed within the period of validity of the pass in theoretical examinations.

The course shall comprise:

- (a) theoretical knowledge instruction to the IR knowledge level;
- (b) instrument flight instruction.

### THEORETICAL KNOWLEDGE

An approved modular IR(A) course shall comprise at least 150 hours of theoretical knowledge instruction.

#### **FLYING TRAINING**

A single-engine IR(A) course shall comprise at least 50 hours instrument time under instruction of which up to 20 hours may be instrument ground time in an FNPT I, or up to 35 hours in an FFS or FNPT II. A maximum of 10 hours of FNPT II or an FFS instrument ground time may be conducted in an FNPT I.

A multi-engine IR(A) course shall comprise at least 55 hours instrument time under instruction, of which up to 25 hours may be instrument ground time in an FNPT I, or up to 40 hours in an FFS or FNPT II. A maximum of 10 hours of FNPT II or an FFS instrument ground time may be conducted in an FNPT I. The remaining instrument flight instruction shall include at least 15 hours in multi-engine aeroplanes.

### **NOTES:**

The holder of a single-engine IR(A) who also holds a multi-engine class or type rating wishing to obtain a multi-engine IR(A) for the first time shall complete a course at an ATO of at least 5 hrs instruction in instrument flying in multi-engine aeroplanes, of which 3 hrs may be in an FFS or FNPT II.

The holder of a CPL(A) or of a Course Completion Certificate for the **Basic Instrument Flight Module** may have the total amount of training required in paragraphs 7 or 8 above reduced by 10 hours.

The holder of an IR(H) may have the total amount of training required in paragraphs 7 or 8 above reduced to 10 hours. The total instrument flight instruction in aeroplane shall comply with paragraph 7 or 8, as appropriate.

The flying exercises up to the IR(A) skill test shall comprise:

- (a) Basic Instrument Flight Module: Procedure and manoeuvre for basic instrument flight covering at least: basic instrument flight without external visual cues: horizontal flight, climbing, descent, turns in level flight, climbing, descent; instrument pattern; steep turn; radio navigation; recovery from unusual attitudes; limited panel; recognition and recovery from incipient & full stalls;
- (b) Procedural Instrument Flight Module:
- (i) pre-flight procedures for IFR flights, including the use of the flight manual and appropriate air traffic services documents in the preparation of an IFR flight plan;
- (ii) procedure and manoeuvres for IFR operation under normal, abnormal and emergency conditions covering at least:
  - transition from visual to instrument flight on take-off,
  - standard instrument departures and arrivals,
  - en-route IFR procedures,
  - holding procedures,

- instrument approaches to specified minima,
- missed approach procedures,
- landings from instrument approaches, including circling;

- (iii) in-flight manoeuvres and particular flight characteristics;
- (iv) if required, operation of a multi-engine aeroplane in the above exercises, including operation of the aeroplane solely by reference to instruments with one engine simulated inoperative and engine shutdown and restart (the latter exercise to be carried out at a safe altitude unless carried out in an FFS or FNPT II).

# IR AIR EXERCISES

**IRI Air Exercise 1** Duration: (minimum 30 minutes depending on applicant's experience).

### **Basic Instrument Flying - Full Panel**

**<u>AIM</u>**: To learn how to to fly the aircraft safely on instruments.

**TEM:** Ground Instrument Checks, Hood usage, Icing Checks, MSA, Disorientation.

Airex: Pre-flight instrument checks: Carry out the pre-flight instrument checks from the checklist.

### **Demo of Disorientation/Physiological Sensations**

a) Straight and level. b) Student closes eyes and lowers head. c) Lower one wing and then raise the nose whilst positively rolling level. No power change. d) Student identifies turn in direction of wing first lowered. e) Repeat (a) and (b). f) Enter medium turn positively, g) Maintain positive back pressure, h) Reverse the turn gently, i) Student identifies - climbing turn in initial direction.

#### **Pitch indications**

- a) Visual straight and level Indication on AI
- b) Changes of attitude (visual) Indications on AI, Use of attitude bar or degrees of pitch on AI
- c) Visual turn Bank angle on AI, Attitude indication AI.

### Yaw indications

- a) Straight and level Visual and AI
- b) Increase power AI wings level, Compass/heading indicator changing, Balance indicator yaw, Correction balance AI heading indication AI
- c) Decrease power as above.

### **Performance instruments**

- a) Altimeter Setting procedure, Anticipation when changing altitude.
- b) Air Speed Indicator ASI Lag, Need to settle attitude before checking
- c) Vertical speed indicator (VSI) Lag, Reversal large attitude changes, Generally undamped, Time taken to stabilise after attitude change.

# **Straight climb and descents**

- a) Climb Power full throttle, Attitude AI, Yaw Balance Ball AI, DI AI, ASI AI VSI, AI adjust and hold, Repeat.
- b) Descents Power approach/low setting, as above.
- c) Levelling Anticipation (altimeter), Attitude (hold), Power cruise (approximate), AI (check), ALT VSI, Repeat, ALT VSI.

# **Turning flight**

- a) Level turns Bank angle AI, Balance Ball, Pitch attitude AI, ALT -AI -VSI, Adjust & hold AI, Balance Ball AI ALT VSI.
- b) Recovery Level attitude AI, Balance indicator, Altimeter, Adjust and hold AI, Altimeter AI VSI, AI.

# **Specific Performance**

- a) All instruments Power, Attitudes select & hold, Performance Instruments: ASI, VSI, altimeter, Adjust attitude power, Re-check performance
- b) Selected instruments Cover selected instruments student sets up desired power/attitude. Check when aircraft stabilised.
- c) Changed configuration As above but extending flaps and undercarriage.

### **IR Air Exercise 2**

### **Instrument Flying, Abnormal (Limited Panel) Operation**

**<u>AIM:</u>** To learn how to fly the aircraft safely on instruments in the event of failure of the Attitude and Heading Indicators.

**<u>TEM:</u>** Ground Instrument Checks, Hood usage, Icing Checks, MSA, Disorientation.

#### **General Notes**

Limited panel instrument flying should be introduced early in the instrument training phase of the course and should be practised concurrently with full panel training. In this way the students' general level of instrument flying competence and the confidence is increased and the exercise does not assume an importance out of proportion to its difficulty.

Since in this exercise the aircraft is controlled by reference to the performance instruments (the control instruments being assumed to have malfunctioned) it is important that the student is aware of the limitations and possible erroneous indications of the performance instruments as demonstrated in the previous Exercise.

# **Before Flight**

Preparatory Instruction - Long briefing 3.

### **Pre-flight Briefing**

The briefing should include the following: a) Airmanship/TEM considerations, b) Summary of the points to be learned, c) Weather and ATC information & d) Flight profile.

### **During Flight**

Attitude Interpretation using the Performance Instruments

- a) Revision of characteristics and behaviour of the performance instruments (see para 19A.l.5); indirect indications of attitude: the accuracy of which can only be assessed when the performance has stabilised; control technique of change attitude, check movement, hold steady until performance has stabilised: assess attitude error, repeat as necessary; importance of trim.
- b) Pitch attitude interpreted indirectly from the performance instruments by using knowledge of the performance that should result from a given power setting if the attitude were correct; correct power + correct performance correct attitude.
- c) Bank attitude interpreted by direct reference to the turn co-ordinator and, provided the flight is balanced, rate of turn is translated into angle of bank.
- d) Balance is maintained in the normal manner by direct reference to the heading from the magnetic compass only when in straight flight, wings level and IAS steady.

# **Modified Scanning Technique**

Selective scanning technique using the Turn Indicator or turn co-ordinator for detecting yaw either because the rudder is not balanced or because the wings are not level. Combination of altimeter, VSI and airspeed for the indirect interpretation of pitch attitude. Basic scanning patterns and the combination of instruments to use during level flight, climbing, descending and turning.

### Level Flight, Climbing and Descending

Practice exercises combining the techniques in paras above; method of maintaining heading; technique for changing from one performance requirement to another e.g. level, climb and descent.

Changing Speed and Configuration: Exercise to practise instrument scan and co-ordination of controls.

Compass/Timed Turns: Both types of turn at standard rate onto specified headings; correction of residual errors after completion of initial turn.

<u>Unusual attitude recoveries:</u> Practice visually, full panel and limited panel recoveries. Remember the order of recovery: Power – Roll – Pitch.

### **Steep turns**

- a) Full panel entry. (i) Gentle application of bank balance power. (ii) Attitude and bank angle AI. (iii) Height altimeter, VSI
- b) Full panel recovery. (i) Gentle roll out AI balance power. (ii) Att for level flight AI, balance, heading indicator. (iii) Ht check altimeter, VSI
- c) Partial panel entry. (i) Gentle application of bank turn indicator balance. (ii) Power increased on entry. (iii) Turn indicator to maintain bank
- d) Partial panel recovery. (i) Level wings turn indicator. (ii) Balance power reduced. (iii) Height check altimeter VSI.

### Approach to the stall

Recoveries from level flight and other attitudes and conditions:-

- a) Instrument indications of approaching stall: (i)Low airspeed, (ii) Loss of height, (iii) Stall warning
- b) Recovery full panel: (i) Attitude selection AI, (ii) Power full, (iii) Direction heading indicator, (iv) Balance.
- c) Recovery partial panel: (i) Attitude for level flight ASI ALT VSI, (ii) Power full, (iii) Level wings TC, (iv) Balance, (v) Level flight, VSI.

Note: Excessive attitude corrections can cause VSI reversal.

### **Straight Dive**

a) Recovery – visual: (i) Power reduced, (ii) Check wings level, (iii) Return to level flight.

#### **Notes:**

- Airspeed will continue to increase until aircraft is level when it will check.
- Unless wings are level, application of pitch up will cause turn indicator to show exaggerated turn.
- VSI will show reverse indications on initial pitch up and selection of level attitude.
- b) Recovery full panel :(i) Power reduced, (ii) Check wings level AI, (iii) Select level attitude, VSI, (iv) Check level, Altimeter, VSI, (v) Check direction AI, heading indicator
- c) Recovery limited panel: (i) Power reduced, (ii) Wings level turn indicator, balance, (iii) Pitch up until airspeed checks hold ignore turn indicator during pitch, (iv) Lateral level turn indicator, balance, (v) Level attitude altimeter, ASI, VSI, (vi) Direction balance, turn indicator, (vii) Adjust as necessary.

### **Spiral Dive**

- a) Recovery visual: (i) Wings must be levelled before pitch up or spiral tightens.
- b) Recovery full panel: (i) Pwr reduced, (ii) Wings level AI, (iii) Select level att, VSI, (iv) Check level, Altimeter, VSI, (v) Check direction AI, DI.
- c) Recovery partial panel: (i) Pwr reduced, (ii) Wings level turn indicator avoid back pressure balance, (iii) Pitch up until airspeed checks hold ignore DI during pitch, (iv) Lateral level turn indicator, balance, (v) Level atti altimeter, ASI, VSI, (vi) Direction balance, turn indicator, (vii) Adjust as necessary.

# **IR Air Exercise 3** (Optional For FI/IRI Course)

**<u>AIM:</u>** To learn how to fly the take-off transition to instrument flight, and to fly precision in-flight manoeuvres.

<u>Airmanship:</u> Pre-flight instrument checks - checklist.

### Visual take-off into Instrument climb

- a) Gentle turn on to runway,
- b) Line-up checks heading, instruments, warning flags away,
- c) Normal visual take-off,
- d) Rotate transfer to instruments,
- e) Attitude AI,
- f) Positive climb AI, altimeter, VSI,
- g) Established climb AI, altimeter, AI, heading indicator AI,
- h) After take-off checks monitor climb,
- j) Normal climb selective scan.

#### **Precision manoeuvres**

Various manoeuvres as directed by the instructor to include:

- a) Climbing & descending at given speeds and rates of descent,
- b) Turning.
- c) Level flight at increased and reduced airspeed and in changed configuration.
- d) Procedural descents levelling at given heights
- e) Simulated glide path descents with small heading changes
- f) Instrument circuits, approaches and go arounds
- g) Approach & After take-off checks as appropriate.

# IR Air Exercise 4: Instrument Flying: Applied

Aim: To learn how to fly procedural instrument flying

### **General Notes**

- This phase of the instrument flying training introduces all the procedural flying which the student will meet in subsequent commercial operations. It also equips the student with the necessary skills to pass the CAA IMC Rating Test or Instrument Rating Test.
- It is assumed that the student has achieved a satisfactory standard of instrument flying before any procedures are introduced. The instructor should always be prepared to revise basic IF techniques if problems are encountered.

### **Radio Instrument Tracking**

Accurate radio instrument tracking forms the basis of all procedural instrument flying so time spent in thoroughly learning this aspect of instrument flying will be invaluable to the student. The aim must be to start the student off with very basic rule of thumb procedures building up to a mental picture of the position of the aircraft in relation to the radio facility.

The trainee instructor should understand and be able to teach the concept of **Max Drift**.

# IR Air Exercise 4A: Instrument Departure, VOR, ADF & GNSS (Duration: 1 hour)

<u>Airmanship:</u> Pre-flight check of all flight instruments and radio navigation equipment using checklists.

### **Instrument Departure:** Radio Instrument Tracking: VOR, ADF &GNSS

- a) Navaid tuning and identification. DOC from AIP
- b) Interception angle range
- c) Effect of wind
- d) Scan pattern
- e) Maintaining track needle indication
- f) Calculation of magnetic heading (RBI)

- g) Assessment of wind direction
- h) Avoidance of ADF/VOR Needle chasing and homing
- i) ADF Needle dip
- j) Navaid station passage
- k) Loading & Checking of RNAV SIDs
- I) Tracking RNAV SIDs

# IR Air Exercise 4B Holding, ILS & Missed Approach (Duration 1.5 hours)

# **Holding procedures**

### **Hold Joining**

- a) Assess entry sector use aircraft heading
- b) Assess wind effect
- c) Assess drift
- d) Assess head/tail component
- e) Beacon passage turn, time, talk

# **Hold Timing:**

- a) Overhead abeam, wings level whichever latest,
- b) QDR 1 minute +/- 1 sec per knot head/tailwind.

### **Hold Tracking:**

- a) Inbound turn Rate 1 (Bank indicator or TC)
- b) Outbound leg 3 times drift (2 times wind within 60° of wind)
- c) Check gate on outbound leg
- d) Inbound turn
- e) Intercept inbound QDM single drift.

# **Subsequent holds:**

- a) Timing errors divide by 2 and apply outbound,
- b) Tracking errors adjust drift outbound.

# **Instrument Landing System (ILS)**

# Localiser (LOC):

- a) Check tuning & ident of ILS
- b) Approach chart selection & interpretation
- c) Calculate Decision Height/Attitude or use chart minima
- d) Calculate drift as applicable
- e) Calculate timing from marker to threshold or as reqd
- f) Use of heading bug
- g) Localiser intercept angle LOC active turn on

- h) R/T phraseology
- i) Final checks
- j) Scan pattern
- k) Track adjustments on the ILS small corrections
- I) Scan pattern
- m) Final Approach Point (FAP) Time Track R/T call
- n) Time elapsed missed approach or land

### Glideslope (G/S):

- a) Calculate rate of descent use chart or GS readout
- d) LOC established. Coinsider configuration change
- c) G/P + 1 dot prepare for descent
- d) G/S central configuration attitude for descent
- e) Know target rate of descent
- f) Scan pattern
- g) Final checks

### **Missed Approach:**

- a) Full Power (or as required)
- b) Level wings
- c) Select Climbing attitude
- d) Configuration changes as needed

- h) Maintain G/S small pitch attitude changes
- i) Airspeed power as required
- j) FAP/SDF Check height/altitude Maintain G/S R/T call
- k) DH/A + 50 feet prepare for missed approach
- I) DH/A visual maintain attitude final checks land
- m) DH/A no visual missed approach
- e) Maintain track or turn as required
- f) Settled in climb R/T call
- g) Follow chart
- h) After take-off checks

# IR Air Exercise 4c NDB/VOR/RNP Approaches Duration 1.5 hours

### **NDB or VOR Approach**

- (a) Check Navaid tuning, Ident & setup
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA/MDA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Descent with procedure

#### **2D RNP Approach**

- (a) Load & check procedure
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA/MDA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Descent with procedure

### **3D RNP Approach**

- (a) Load & check procedure
- (b) Approach chart selection and interpretation
- (c) Calculation of DA
- (d) Calculation of drift
- (e) Calculation of timing if required
- (f) Interception of FAT +/-5° at published altitude
- (g) Maintainance of track. Scan procedure. Configuration changes
- (h) Intercept Glidepath using Vertical Deviation Indicator

- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitudes against chart
- (k) Beacon passage (if applicable)
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA/MDA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach.
- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitudes against chart distance every mile or as published
- (k) Approach Status Annunciation by FAF Announce 'LNAV' etc
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA/MDA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach. SUSP
- (h) R/T calls as required checklist actions
- (j) Check altitude against chart at FAF
- (k) Approach Status Annunciation by FAF Announce 'LPV' etc
- (L) Lateral and vertical profile maintenance
- (I) Approach to DA
- (m) Missed Approach Point (MAP) land or go-around
- (n) Visual land/circle
- (o) Non visual Missed Approach. SUSP

# **Instrument Rating (Aeroplane) Skill Test**

The IR(A) skill test is the same whether the training was modular or via the CB-IR/CBM-IR.

The initial IR Skill test is conducted by an Instrument Rating Examiner (IRE). The examiner will be assigned by the CAA. Subsequent IR renewals may be by an IRE or IRR (Instrument rating renewal examiner).

For full details see **CAA Standards Document 1**. The IR(A) skill test comprises of the following sections:

### <u>Section 1 - Pre-Flight Operations and Departure</u>

Use of flight manual (or equivalent) especially aircraft performance calculation, mass and balance

Use of Air Traffic Services document and weather document

Preparation of ATC flight plan and IFR flight log

Pre-flight Inspection

Weather Minima

**Taxying** 

Pre take-off briefing, take-off

Transition to instrument flight

Instrument departure procedures, altimeter setting

ATC liaison - compliance, R/T procedures (assessed in all sections)

### **Section 2 - General Handling**

Control of the aeroplane by reference solely to instruments, including:

Level flight at various speeds, trim

Climbing and descending turns with sustained Rate 1 turn

Recoveries from unusual attitudes, including sustained 45° bank turns and steep descending turns

Recovery from approach to stall in level flight, climbing/descending turns and in landing configuration

Limited panel: stabilised climb or descent, level turns at Rate 1 onto given headings, recovery from unusual attitudes

### Section 3 - En-Route IFR Procedure

Tracking, including interception, e.g. NDB, VOR, RNAV

Use of radio aids

Level flight, control of heading, altitude and airspeed, power setting, trim technique

Altimeter settings

Timing and revision of ETAs (en-route hold, if required)

Monitoring of flight progress, flight log, fuel usage, systems' management

Ice protection procedures, simulated if necessary

### **Section 4 - 3D Approach Procedures**

Setting and checking of navigational aids, identification of facilities

Arrival procedures, altimeter checks

Approach and landing briefing, including descent/approach/landing checks

**Holding Procedure** 

Compliance with published approach procedure

Approach timing

Altitude, speed heading control (stabilised approach)

Go-around action

Missed approach procedure/landing

### **Section 5 - 2D Approach Procedures**

Setting and checking of navigational aids, identification of facilities

Arrival procedures, altimeter checks

Approach and landing briefing, including descent/approach/landing checks

**Holding Procedures** 

Compliance with published approach procedure

Approach timing

Altitude, speed heading control (stabilised approach)

Go-around action

Missed approach procedure/landing

### Section 6 - Flight with One Engine Inoperative (ME only)

Simulated Engine Failure After Take Off or on go-round

Asymmetric approach and procedural go around

Asymmetric approach and full stop landing

ATC liaison - compliance, R/T procedures

**Note:** Use of checklist, airmanship, anti-icing/de-icing procedures, etc. apply in all sections.

# RNP Approach Availability during the Initial IR Skill Test

UK Part-FCL requires that an RNP approach be flown on every instrument rating test or check. However, it is recognised that there are reasons that may preclude this from happening, for example:

- Onboard equipment unserviceability;
- A RAIM outage or similar affecting planned destination;
- ♣ ATC contingency preventing planned approach from being flown;
- ♣ Non-availability of an RNP approach within a reasonable distance of departure airfield.

The IR skill test should normally be planned with the expectation of being able to fly an RNP approach during the test, and every effort should be made to achieve this. If, on the day, circumstances mean that an RNP approach is not available, the test may go ahead, and 2 approaches using terrestrial aids (NDB, VOR, ILS) should be flown. The **SRG 2131** should be annotated by the examiner to indicate that the test is incomplete. The IR skill test can subsequently be completed to include PBN privileges following a successful test in an SP aeroplane, FFS or FNPT2 with an IRE within 30 days of the original test, during which an RNP approach is flown to either go around or land. In this case, a new form **SRG 2131** should be completed, marked to indicate that it is for the completion of the original incomplete test and submitted to the Authority. The expiry date of the IR will be calculated from the date that the RNP approach is flown.

If 2 approaches using terrestrial aids are flown on an initial IR skill test, then consideration must be given to the consequences of a failure of one of those approaches or of the RNP approach.

- ♣ If one of the approaches using terrestrial aids was unsatisfactory, then the applicant has gained a partial pass. The retest could comprise an RNP approach (2D or 3D as appropriate) in order to gain PBN privileges but, in this case, it must be flown in an aeroplane. If the retest comprises a terrestrial approach, then the requirement to fly an RNP approach in an aeroplane, FSTD or FFS must also be satisfied.
- \* If the 2 approaches using terrestrial aids have been flown satisfactorily, but the subsequent RNP approach was unsatisfactory then the applicant has gained a partial pass. The retest must comprise an RNP approach and should be flown in an aeroplane unless no RNP approaches are available. If 2 sections of the initial test are failed, then the applicant moves to the Second Series. If one section of the initial test and the RNP approach are failed, then the applicant moves to the Second Series.

Any test for the initial award of PBN privileges must also comply with the requirements of CAP 2138.

# **Application for the IR**

A new <u>Professional Issue Online Application form</u> for CPL,CPL IR and ATPL issue is now available to use for applicants who have not previously used the elicensing system.

Please note that from 10th May 2021, all applications for professional licence issue must be made using eLicensing system or this online application form. The paper versions of SRG1183A/SRG1183H will no longer be accepted.

Guidance on how to apply for Professional licence issue is available on the CAA website.

# **Typical IR ST (SE) Flight Test Format**

It is important that an instructor is familiar with the content of each test and typical test profiles to be flow during test in order to better prepare the student.

### **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning
- Clearances
- Airways to Cardiff. Autopilot available in cruise. Map ON.

### **Arrival:**

- STAR into Cardiff initially flown with the autopilot available.
- Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CDF NDB with GPS & MAP inhibited.

# **Holding:**

• Entry and 1 or 2 holds at the CDF. MAP OFF. No autopilot.

# 2D Approach:

• Procedural RNP approach to CDFA minima and go-around. MAP ON. No autopilot.

### **Diversion to Bristol**

• Diversion to Bristol with or without autopilot.

### 3D Approach:

• Radar vectored ILS approach at Bristol to DA and go-around. Divert outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe. MAP off. No autopilot.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel
  - Stalling:
    - Approach Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
    - Landing Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
- Limited Panel:
  - o S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **Landing:**

• Visual landing at Blackbushe. Applicant responsible for all aspects of flight including lookout.

# Typical IR Skill Test (ME) Flight Test Format 1

# **Departure from EGLK:**

- Pre-flight planning
- Clearances
- Airways to Cardiff. Autopilot available in cruise. Map ON

### **Arrival:**

- STAR into Cardiff initially flown with the autopilot if desired.
- Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CDF NDB with GPS & MAP inhibited.

# **Holding:**

• Entry and 1 or 2 holds at the CDF. Map and autopilot OFF.

# 3D Approach:

- Radar-vectored ILS to minima and go-around. Map ON, autopilot OFF.
- Simulated engine failure in climb.

# **Diversion to Gloucester**

- Diversion to Gloucester simulated asymmetric. Map and autopilot as required. Ops normal after a few minutes.
- Reset simulated asymmetric approaching Gloucester. No drills.

# 2D Approach:

- Procedural simulated asymmetric RNP app at Gloucester to CDFA DA and asym go-around. Map ON autopilot OFF.
- Restore failed engine in climb. Divert outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe. Map and autopilot as required.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel
  - Stalling:
    - Approach Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
    - Landing Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
- Limited Panel:
  - o S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# Landing at Blackbushe:

- Reset simulated engine failure. No drills. Applicant removes hood.
- Visual simulated asymmetric landing at Blackbushe. Applicant responsible for all aspects of flight including lookout.

# **Typical IR Skill Test (ME) Flight Test Format 2**

# **Departure from EGTK:**

- Pre-flight planning
- Clearances
- Airways to Gloucester. Autopilot available in cruise. Map ON

### **Arrival:**

- Arrival into Gloucester initially flown with the autopilot if desired.
- Manually flown single-needle tracking to the GLO NDB with GPS & MAP inhibited.

# **Holding:**

• Entry and 1 or 2 holds at the GLO. Map and autopilot OFF.

# 2D Approach:

- Procedural RNP approach to CDFA minima and go-around. Map on, autopilot off.
- Simulated engine failure in climb.

### **Diversion to Oxford**

• Diversion to Oxford simulated asymmetric. Map and autopilot as required. Reset failed engine after short while.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGTK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel
  - Stalling:
    - Approach Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
    - Landing Configuration. Recover at first sign of approaching stall.
- Limited Panel:
  - o S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **3D Approach:**

- Reset simulated engine failure. No drills.
- Radar vectored simulated asymmetric ILS approach at Oxford to DA and go-around. Map ON and autopilot off.

# **Landing at Oxford:**

- Applicant removes hood.
- Visual simulated asymmetric landing at Oxford. Applicant responsible for all aspects of flight including lookout.

# **Typical IR Proficiency Check (SE) Aeroplane Flight Test Format**

# **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning
- Clearances
- En-route outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot and Map use up to applicant.

### **Arrival:**

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot and map as required.

# **Holding:**

• Entry and 1 or 2 holds at the CIT. Autopilot and map as required.

# 2D Approach:

• Procedural RNP approach to CDFA minima and go-around. Autopilot and map as required.

# 3D Approach:

• Procedural ILS approach at Cranfield to DA and go-around. Return outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe. Autopilot and map as required.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel
  - Assessed during approaches
- Limited Panel:
  - o S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **Landing:**

• Visual landing at Blackbushe. Applicant responsible for all aspects of flight including lookout.

# **Typical IR Proficiency Check in Aeroplane (ME) Flight Test Format**

# **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning & Clearances
- Airways or outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot and map as applicant requires.

### **Arrival:**

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot and map as required.

### **Holding:**

• Entry and 1 or 2 holds at the CIT. Autopilot and map as required.

# 2D Approach:

- Procedural RNP approach to CDFA minima and go-around. Autopilot and map as required.
- Simulated engine failure in climb.

# 3D Approach:

- Procedural simulated asymmetric ILS approach at Cranfield to DA and asymmetric goaround. Autopilot off for ILS. Map as required.
- Divert outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe.
- Restore failed engine. Autopilot and map as required.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel:
  - Assessed during approaches
- Limited Panel:
  - o S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

### **Landing:**

- Reset simulated engine failure. No drills.
- Visual simulated asymmetric landing at Blackbushe. Student responsible for all aspects of flight inc lookout.

# **IMC Rating & Instrument Rating (Restricted)**

### General

The IMC Rating is a UK national rating and is designed as a 'get you out of trouble' qualification and not as a replacement for the IR.

UK National CPL and ATPL licences (not Part FCL CPLs or ATPLs) contain the privileges of an IMC rating embedded within them, without the need for revalidation. These privileges can be exercised on non-Part 21 aircraft and on Part 21 aircraft (up to 2000 kg MTOW and 4 passengers (not seats)).

The IMC Rating may not be placed onto an EASA licence. However, the IMC Rating is equivalent to the IR (Restricted) or IR(R) which can be put onto an UK.Part FCL licence. Once you have obtained the IMC Rating you may apply to the UK CAA to have an IR (Restricted) endorsed on your UK.Part FCL licence.

You can complete the IMC Rating training and after a successful ground examination, flight test and application, have it added to your UK.Part FCL licence as an IR(R) – an IR(Restricted). This will have all the privileges and restrictions of an IMC Rating and will be valid for flight in both Part 21 and non-Part 21 aircraft.

The revalidation/renewal requirements of the IMC Rating shall apply to the IR (Restricted).

The use of the IMC Rating/IR (Restricted) is confined to UK airspace only. This includes The Channel Islands, Isle of Man and Northern Ireland.

The IMC Rating/IR (Restricted) cannot be put on a LAPL. Holders of an IMC Rating/IR (Restricted) who elect to regrade to a LAPL will have the IMC Rating/IR (R) removed as the LAPL is a VFR only UK licence.

The UK CAA will issue information via Skywise on the impact of the Performance Base Navigation (PBN) regulations on the UK IMC Rating/IR (Restricted). At present (Mar 2023), there is no requirement for any PBN training or approaches in the IR(R) syllabus/test, however it is recommended.

# **Pre-Entry Requirements**

The following paragraphs detail the experience requirements for the IMC Rating:

An applicant for an IMC Rating must have:

- (a) 25 hours total experience as pilot of aeroplanes following PPL(A) issue and which may include the training for the UK IMC rating.
- (b) 10 hours as PIC of aeroplanes to include 5 hours as PIC of aeroplanes on cross country flights.
- (c) a UK issued Flight Radiotelephony Operators Licence (FRTOL).

IMCR/IRR COURSE PRE-ENTRY CHECKLIST						
Hold Valid Licence with FRTOL	Type:					
Hold Relevant current aircraft class rating?	Expiry:					
Hold 25 hrs TT since licence issue (May include IMCR training)?	TT:					
Hold 10 hrs PIC(A)	PIC(A):					
Hold 5 hrs PIC(XC)	PIC(XC)					

# **Credits**

The holder of a course completion certificate for the EASA Basic Instrument Flying Module (BIFM) may have the total amount of flight training reduced by 10 hours.

IMC Rating privileges are contained within a UK national CPL(A) or ATPL(A) (this does not include a JAA or EASA licence). There is no requirement for a separate certificate of test for these licences, nor renewal or revalidation.

Holders of the AOPA (UK) Radio Navigation Certificate may have instrument flight training during the Applied Stage reduced by 5 hours.

Additional credits are available. For details refer to CAP 804 Section 5 (UK National Licences) Part E.

# **Ground Training**

A minimum of 20 hours of theoretical knowledge training covering the following subjects:

- Physiological Factors
- Flight Instruments
- Aeronautical Information Service NOTAMS, UK AIP, AICs
- Flight Planning Meteorology, Altimetry, Terrain clearance, Radio aids, Radar approach procedures
- Privileges of the IMC Rating

**IMC Rating Theoretical Knowledge Examination:** 25 multi-choice questions covering the IMC Rating theoretical knowledge. The pass mark is 72%. The examination can be taken before or after the flight test. The examination is still in paper form and is not available on-line. The 3 written papers are now quite old and contain errors due to the fact that the rules have changed. Allowances are made for this in the marking of the test. The examination is valid for 21 months for the issue of the IMC Rating and 12 months for the conduct of the flight test.

# **Flight Training**

Completed at least 15 hours dual instrument flying training with a suitably qualified FI or IRI (not a CRI unless he also holds an IRI). Up to 5 hours of this training may be completed in an STD device qualified BITD, FNPT I/II, up to 2 hours of which may be in other FSTDs.

At least 10 of the 15 hours must be flown by sole reference to instruments.

Where an applicant wishes to be tested for the IMC Rating on a SP ME aeroplane the flying training must ensure that when in simulated instrument flight conditions in a ME aeroplane the applicant can maintain stable flight after an engine failure at climb power, then climb at recommended speed and execute the normal range of flight manoeuvres under asymmetric power.

The flight training shall cover the following items:

#### **Basic Stage**

- Full and limited panel flight manoeuvres to include recoveries from unusual attitudes
- Partial panel flight manoeuvres

### **Applied Stage**

- Pre-flight planning
- Departure and en-route (including navaid tracking)
- Approach and let-down
- Bad weather circuits and landings

# **IMC Rating Initial Skill test**

Conducted by an Instrument Rating Examiner (IRE) or Flight Examiner (FE) who holds IMC Rating/IR(R) examining privileges. Only examiners who hold licences, ratings and certificates issued by the UK CAA may examine for the IMC Rating/IR(R). The CAA are now saying that the examiner should not have conducted more that 25% of the required training for the applicant, however this does not seem to be backed up in the regulations.

A pass may be gained in the course of up to 3 individual flights made during a 28 day period. Since September 2023, it is possible to gain a Partial Pass in the IMC Rating skill test or proficiency check. This will require the examiner to manually alter the **SRG 1176** until these forms can be updated. Similarly, the examiner may issue a manually altered **SRG 1100** to give temporary privileges, but only for a Part FCL licence (see below).

The flight test comprises of the following sections:

### Section 1 - Full Panel Instrument Flying

• Straight and level at given speeds, turns at a given rate and onto given headings, climbing and descending including turns, recovery from unusual attitudes.

### Section 2 - Limited Panel Instrument Flying (Failure of Attitude Indicator and DI)

• Straight and level flight, climbing and descending, turns onto given headings, recovery from unusual attitudes.

### **Section 3 - Radio Navigation Aids**

• Use of radio navigation aids for position-finding using one or more aids to include VOR and ADF/NDB, maintenance of a given track based on a pilot-interpreted aid for 10 minutes.

### **Section 4 - Let-Down and Approach Procedures**

• Let-down and approach to minima, missed approach procedure using a pilot-interpreted aid, carry out a recognised instrument approach procedure to minima, thence the appropriate go-around and missed approach procedure.

#### **Section 5 - Bad Weather Circuits**

• Bad weather circuit following Section D, position the aircraft in the circuit at the direction of the examiner, to carry out a visual bad weather circuit and landing under specified weather conditions.

### Section 6 - Flight with Asymmetric Power (ME only) (see note)

• Control of the aeroplane and maintenance of a given heading and asymmetric climb speed, following the failure of one engine in the climbing configuration at normal climb power. Identification of the failed engine and the completion of all essential drills and checks. Climbing and level turns in asymmetric flight as directed by the examiner.

**Note:** Throughout Section 6, the examiner is responsible for navigation and ATC liaison. On resumption of normal flight the examiner will advise the applicant of the aeroplane position.

**Note:** As of Feb 2023, the CAA has approved the use of the **SRG 1100** – Temporary Certificate – to be used to give a pilot temporary IR(R) privileges, provided that it is to be placed on a Part FCL licence. This will require the examiner to manually amend the form. See suggested example below:

Title.	mame.	oumaine.		Date of bill	и.				
2. Temporary Privile	eges	(To be completed by the Examiner)							
I declare that the applicant has fulfilled <u>all</u> the applicable and necessary requirements to exercise temporary privileges as follows (select only item(s) applicable to this Temporary Certificate):									
Ae	roplane:	Helicopter:	Balloon:	Sailplane:	Airship:				
Instructor Certificate	- FI:	CRI:	IRI:	TRI:	SFI:				
Class Rating (including	ng variants):			Land:	Sea:				
Type Rating (including	ng variants):		_						
Single Pilot: Multi Pilot: Co Pilot only: Cruise Relief Pilot:									
Both (SP/MP):	VFR: IFR:								
Additional Ratings -	Mountain Rating:	En-Route Instr	ument Rating:	Sailplane Cloud F	Rating:				
Instrument Rating -	SP SE:	SP ME: MP:		IR(R) SE					
Additional Privileges/	Restrictions/Remarks:								
3. Confirmation of Skill Test. Proficiency Check or AoC (To be completed by the Examiner and where ZFTT/Base									

# **Validity**

25 months plus the remainder of the month of test.

### Revalidation

#### EITHER:

Pass a revalidation flight test prior to rating expiry. Only examiners who hold licences, ratings and certificates issued by the UK CAA may examine for the IMC Rating/IR(R).

### **AND**

The applicant must show logbook evidence that in the period between flight tests he/she has successfully completed a let-down, approach to minima, go-around and missed approach using a different aid from that in the flight test. This must be signed by an instructor qualified to give instrument flying instruction.

### OR

Carry out 2 approach procedures using different aids during the revalidation flight test.

### Renewal

Where the UK IMC Rating has expired by not more than 5 years the revalidation requirements apply for renewal.

# **IMC Rating Revalidation/Renewal Flight Test**

Conducted by an Instrument Rating Examiner (IRE) or Flight Examiner (FE) who holds IMC Rating/IR(R) examining privileges. Only examiners who hold licences, ratings and certificates issued by the UK CAA may examine for the IMC Rating/IR(R).

A pass may be gained in the course of up to 3 individual flights made during a 28 day period. Failure in any part of the test will require the candidate to take the full test again. There is no 'partial pass' for this test. The revalidation/renewal flight test will comprise Sections 2, 4 and 5 of the initial flight test. The type of approach aid used must be entered in the candidate's logbook.

A revalidation/renewal flight test which is a first multi-engine IMC rating test must include Section 6.

# **IMC Rating Expired by more than 5 years**

Complete dual instruction as required to pass the initial IMC flight test with an examiner.

### **IMC Rating Expired by more than 10 years**

Complete dual instruction as required to pass the initial IMC flight test with an examiner. Pass the IMC Rating theoretical knowledge examination.

# **Privileges**

An IMC Rating/IR (Restricted) entitles the holder of the licence to act as pilot in command or co-pilot of an aeroplane flying under IFR except:

- (i) in Class A airspace or
- (ii) when the aeroplane is taking off or landing at any place if the flight visibility below cloud is less than 1,500 metres.

The holder of the IMC Rating / IR(Restricted) must not fly as pilot in command or co-pilot of an aeroplane outside the airspace of the UK in circumstances which require compliance with the IFR.

The CAA strongly recommends that IMC / IR (R) holders seek appropriate PBN training prior to attempting a RNP approach.

# IMC Rating conversion to Instrument Rating (Restricted) (IR(R))

An applicant for an IR(Restricted) shall:

- (a) Hold a valid IMC rating OR
- (b) hold a valid UK national CPL(A)/ATPL(A) issued prior to 1 July 2000.

The requirement of Part MED.A.030(g) shall not apply to the IR(R).

# Application for the UK IMC Rating/Instrument Rating (Restricted) (IR(R))

After a successful pass of the written exam and the skill test, the applicant applies to the CAA for the rating to be added to the licence.





# Application for the Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC) or (Restricted) Instrument Rating (IR(R)) (SRG1125)

#### **BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

This form is used by the flight crew to add the IMC/IR(R) rating to their licence or to renew or revalidate their IMC/IR(R) rating.

How much will it cost me?

An initial issue of the IMC/IR(R) rating has a fee of £131.

A renewal or revalidation of the IMC/IR(R) rating has a fee of £96.

Additional courier charges may apply:-

- UK £15
- Europe £25
- · Rest of the world £35

How can I get help?

You can find further guidance on our IMC rating page.

If you have any questions you can contact our licensing team:

- Email fclweb@caa.co.uk (preferred)
- Phone 0330 022 1972 (Mon Fri 8:30 16:30)

Terms of Usage

Please accept our terms of usage

I ACCEPT THE TERMS OF USAGE

I REJECT THE TERMS OF USAGE

A new online application form for the initial issue, revalidation and renewal of **Instrument Meteorological Conditions** (IMC) ratings or Instrument Rating (Restricted) (IR(R)) ratings has been created by the CAA. This will soon replace paper (PDF) application form **SRG 1125**.

Also, a new online Course Completion Certificate CAA 5019 has been created and will need to be completed and uploaded as part of the online application.

Simply follow the online instructions and pay the fee.

There will be an 8-week transition period, during which time the CAA will continue to accept the paper application form. From 3rd June 2022, the paper version of **SRG 1125** will be withdrawn.

# **Typical IMC Rating Skill Test (SE) Flight Test Format**

It is important that an instructor is familiar with the content of each test and typical test profiles to be flow during test in order to better prepare the student.

### **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning & Clearances
- Take-off, instrument departure and flight outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot OFF. Map as required.

### **En-Route:**

- Position fixing by navaids (CPT).
- Tracking to or from a navaid (CPT or WOD/WCO/CIT) for 10 minutes.

### Arrival:

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.

# **Holding:**

Only if required by ATC.

# **ILS Approach** (assuming not signed off during training):

- Procedural ILS approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA and go-around.
   Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.
- Missed approach.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Autopilot OFF. Map as required.
- Full Panel:
  - Unusual attitude recoveries.
- Limited Panel:
  - S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates including turns.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

### Landing:

• Bad weather/low-level circuit to land at Blackbushe. Student responsible for all aspects of flight inc lookout.

# **Typical IMC Rating Skill Test (ME) Flight Test Format**

# **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning & Clearances
- Take-off, instrument departure and flight outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot OFF. Map as required.

### **En-Route:**

- Position fixing by navaids (CPT).
- Tracking to or from a navaid (CPT or WOD/WCO/CIT) for 10 minutes.

### **Arrival**:

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.

# **Holding:**

• Only if required by ATC.

# ILS Approach (assuming not signed off during training):

- Procedural ILS approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA and go-around. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.
- Missed approach.
- Simulated engine failure during missed approach. Once drills complete reset 2 engines.
- Return outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe.
- Autopilot and map as required.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Full Panel:
  - Unusual attitude recoveries.
- Limited Panel:
  - S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates including turns.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **Landing:**

• 2 engined Bad weather/low-level circuit to land at Blackbushe. Student responsible for all aspects of flight inc lookout.

# **Typical IMC Rating Proficiency Check (SE) Flight Test Format**

# **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning & Clearances
- Take-off, instrument departure and flight outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot OFF. Map as required.

### **En-Route:**

• Autopilot and Map as required.

# **Arrival:**

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.

### **Holding:**

Only if required by ATC.

### **ILS Approach:**

- Procedural ILS approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA and go-around. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.
- Missed Approach
- Return outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe.
- Autopilot and map as required.

# Second Approach (unless signed off during rating validity):

• Procedural RNP approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA/MDA and goaround. Autopilot OFF. Map ON.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Limited Panel:
  - S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates including turns.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **Landing:**

• Bad weather/low-level circuit to land at Blackbushe. Student responsible for all aspects of flight inc lookout.

# **Typical IMC Rating Proficiency Check (SE) Flight Test Format**

# **Departure:**

- Pre-flight planning & Clearances
- Take-off, instrument departure and flight outside controlled airspace to Cranfield. Autopilot OFF. Map as required.

### **En-Route:**

• Autopilot and Map as required.

### **Arrival**:

• Manually flown single-needle tracking to the CIT NDB. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.

# **Holding:**

• Only if required by ATC.

### **ILS Approach:**

- Procedural ILS approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA and go-around. Autopilot OFF. Map OFF.
- Missed approach and return outside controlled airspace to Blackbushe.
- Autopilot and map as required.

### Second Approach (unless signed off during rating validity):

• Procedural RNP approach at Cranfield to IMC rating recommended DA/MDA and goaround. Autopilot OFF. Map ON.

# **Asymmetric Flight:**

• Only if first proficiency check in an ME aeroplane.

# **General Handling:** (En-route to EGLK outside controlled airspace)

- Limited Panel:
  - S&L, level turns shortest way to hdgs, climbs and descents at given speeds/rates.
  - o Unusual Attitude Recoveries: Climbing turn, spiral dive, level 45° steep turn.
- Recover to Full Panel

# **Landing:**

• Bad weather/low-level circuit to land at Blackbushe. Student responsible for all aspects of flight inc lookout.

# **IMC Rating Course**

# **Introduction to the IR(R)**

Issue 5 07Aug22 Steve Pells

### 1: Why do you want an IR(R)?

- To enable me to fly in poorer weather? Or to make me a safer pilot?
- Discuss the VMC criteria as already exists, and point out the visibility criteria are identical. Discuss Aeroweather VFR/IFR symbology and rationale.
- What are the VFR? Weather minima, cruising levels SERA. UK dispensation exists.
- What are the IFR? Cruising levels, minimum height rule.

### 2: What is an IR(R)?

Discuss IMC Rating and IR(R). Only 4 differences between an IR and an IR(R).

- UK only
- Airspace classes permitted (No Class A)
- Visibility minima (note not DA/MDA)
- Validity 25 months plus the remainder of the month.

Mention CB-IR.

### 3: Outline of the course

- 1. BIFM, full & partial panel.
- 2. VOR, NDB tracking. GNSS navigation.
- 3. Approaches (ILS, LOC, PAR, VOR, NDB, RNP, SRA).
- **4.** Holding Explain situation.
- 5. Unusual attitudes both full and partial panel.
- 6. Bad weather circuit.
- 7. Minimum 15 Hours training with minimum 10 hrs by sole reference to instruments.
- 8. Vision restricting devices. Lookout. Icing checks.

### 4: Format of the Test

As above, with 1 or 2 approaches. Explain the requirements.

#### 5: Basic Radial Scan

Introduce and brief along the lines of climbing and descending. Consider turning separately. Stress important instruments in each phase:

**S&L:** AI, DI, VSI, (ALT to lesser degree), but NOT ASI

Climbing: AI, ASI, DI, (ALT approaching level out), but NOT VSI

Descending (including at given ROD): AI, ASI, DI, VSI, (ALT approaching level out)

Turning: AI, TC, VSI, (ALT to lesser degree), DI approaching rollout, but NOT ASI. Discuss Rate One turns inc AOB.

### **6: Bad Weather Circuit Brief**

Assume weather conditions are VMC minima: Cloud base 600' aal, visibility 1500m.

# 7: Instrument Approach Charts

Purpose of IACs

Providers of charts: AIP, NavTech, Jeppesen. Advantages and disadvantages Introduction to Minima.

### **8: Further Discussion Topics**

For guidance during training and assessment

- IFR & VFR Regulations What are the IFR and VFR Rules
- Choice of approach charts UK CAA, NavBlue, Jeppesen
- Aerodrome Operating Minima including visibility Take-Off Minima, Take-Off Alternate, Approach Ban, OCH, MDA, Visibility minima/RVR, Lighting failures, approved autopilot
- MSAs MSA, Local MSA, MEA, MOCA, TAA. Temp correction.
- En-Route Charts Choice of vendor. Routings
- Holding Basic study
- Procedure Turns 45 degree.
- ILS Approaches
- LOC Approaches
- VOR & VOR/DME Approaches

- NDB & NDB/DME Approaches
- RNP Approaches (3D & 2D) SBAS, Temperature correction.
- SRA Approaches RT
- PAR Approaches RT
- VDF Approaches
- DME Arc Procedures
- Go-Around & Missed Approach
- Limited Panel Ops General handling, timed compass turns
- Unusual Attitudes Full and limited panel
- Circling Approaches Minima, missed approach
- Bad Weather Circuits
- CDFA & Non-CDFA Profiles Calc of profile, visibility penalty

# IMC Rating Lesson 1: Basic Instrument Flight (BIFM) 1

# Aims:

- To learn basic instrument flying, full panel.
- To learn how to fly a bad weather circuit to land.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

- Check that the student meets the pre-entry requirements.
- Intro to the IMC Rating (see briefing notes above).
- Briefing on Straight & Level, Turning, Climbing and Descending on instruments.
- Briefing on icing and MSA awareness.
- Briefing on the Bad Weather Circuit.

# **Board Briefing:**

# Ex 13d: Bad-Weather Circuit

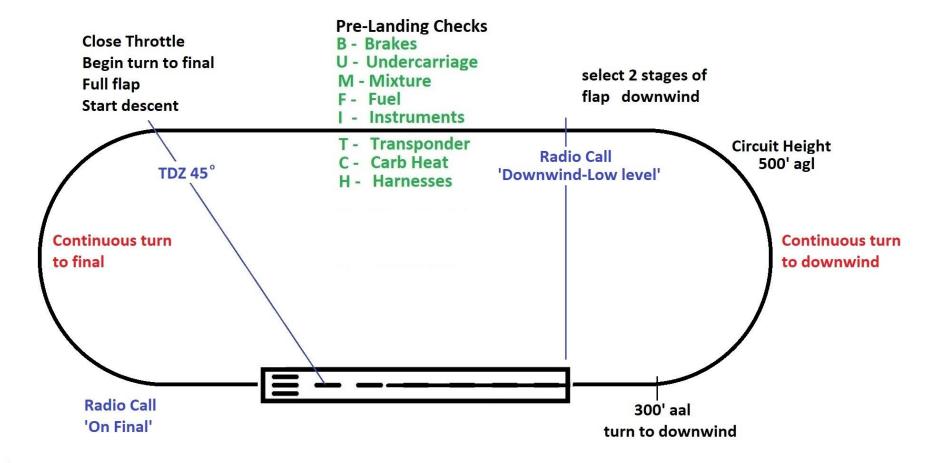
05 Mar 21

AIM: To learn to fly a bad weather circuit to land.

**T&E:** Circuit traffic, Terrain, Obstacles, Loss of control.

M: Lookout, MSA, Pre-flight study, Instruments, Bank angle.

### Airex:

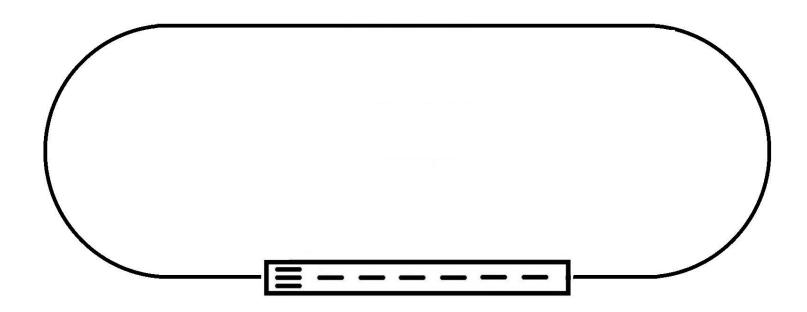


# Ex 13d: Bad-Weather Circuit

**AIM:** To learn to fly a bad weather circuit to land.

T&E: M:

Airex:



### Airex:

- 1. Teach the importance of ground instrument checks and instrument setup.
- 2. Teach the procedure for donning the hood/goggles before or after take-off.
- 3. Teach the difference between flying with the natural horizon and the Al.
- 4. Practice the transition from VMC to IMC.
- 5. Teach icing checks and MSA awareness. FREDAMI.
- **6.** Introduce and practice **straight and level** flight using the selective radial scan (SRS).
- 7. Introduce and practice turning at rate one using the selective radial scan (SRS).
- 8. Introduce and practice climbing (full power) using the selective radial scan (SRS).
- 9. Introduce and practice descending at 500 fpm using the selective radial scan (SRS).
- 10. Teach a bad weather circuit to land to a touch and go. The student will then practice one.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

#### Ex IMCR 1: BIFM 1

#### **AIREX:**

- 1: STUDENT taxi instrument checks.
- 2: STUDENT take-off. Hood/goggles on.
- 3: DEMO/Teach the use of the Al.
- 4: DEMO/Teach transition to instruments.
- 5: DEMO/Teach Ice/MSA checks.
- 6: DEMO/Teach S&L. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 7: DEMO/Teach Rate One turns. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 8: DEMO/Teach Full power climb STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 9: DEMO/Teach 500 fpm descent. STUDENT PRACTICE
- 10: DEMO/Teach Bad Wx circuit to T&G. STUDENT

PRACTICE.

# **Debriefing**

• The student will probably find the lesson hard work with lots of concentration required. A short debrief with emphasis on instrument & icing/MSA checks and selective radial scan would be beneficial.

- Failure to check all of the required flight instruments before flight (AI, TC, DI or compass).
- Overly tight grip on the controls resulting in over-controlling of the aircraft advise the student to relax grip or use the armrest.
- Fixating on a single instrument, resulting in a breakdown of the radial scan advise the need to maintain the radial scan.
- The most common fault is over-concentration on one instrument with a breakdown in the radial scan. Very often this occurs during power changes where, with the engine power instruments outside the normal scan pattern the student, in attempting to set the power accurately, will ignore the indications of the flight instruments. The instructor must insist that this is an extension of the selective scan technique and that the scan must be maintained.
- Over-controlling is another common fault often due to tension, failure by the student to allow time for the instruments to settle after a change
  and the failure by the student to relate the miniaturised presentation of attitude changes on the AI with large attitude changes by the aircraft.
  Generally, tension disappears as proficiency increases but the instructor may need to re-demonstrate the relationship between instrument and
  visual indications to cure gross over-control. Finally, the student must be taught that control movements in instrument flight should generally
  be partial to changes in pressure with hands and feet rather than obvious movement. If the problem persists have the student hold the controls
  only with the fingertips whilst carrying out some manoeuvres.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

- Do not overload the student. If necessary, break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.
- When teaching icing checks, do not teach the student to ask 'any ice' at frequent intervals this shows no icing awareness, just the ability to remember to ask! Instead, encourage them to look at the OAT. If the OAT is above 5°C, then they should say something along the lines 'Temperature plus 9, no icing threat'. If the temperature is 5°C or below say 'Temperature 2 degrees any ice?'.

# IMC Rating Lesson 2: Basic Instrument Flight (BIFM) 2

### Aims:

- To practice basic instrument flying and introduce limited panel flying.
- To learn how to fly in different configurations (including missed approach).

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

· Briefing on Limited Panel instrument flight.

### Airex:

- 1. Practice straight and level flying at different airspeeds.
- 2. Practice climbing and descending turns.
- 3. Practice basic instrument flight in different configurations of gear and flap.
- **4.** Teach descent in approach configuration to clean climb (go-around).
- 5. Teach flying using limited panel including compass and timed turns.
- 6. Practice bad weather circuit to land.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

### Ex IMCR 2: BIFM 2

#### **AIREX:**

1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-off. Hood On.
2: REVISION: Give headings to fly. Give climbs & descents to specified altitudes. STUDENT PRACTICE.
3: DEMO/Teach S&L at diff speeds. STUDENT PRACTICE. 4: DEMO/Teach S&L at diff flap settings. STUDENT PRACTICE. 6: DEMO/Teach descent & g/a with app flap. STUDENT PRACTICE.
7: DEMO/Teach S&L limited panel. STUDENT

PRACTICE. 8: DEMO/Teach climb & descent limited panel. STUDENT PRACTICE. 9: STUDENT PRACTICE flying limited panel under your vectors to airfield. 10: Reset full panel. STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx circuit to full stop.

# **Common Student Errors**

- Failure to comply with any aeroplane speed limitation e.g. flap or undercarriage extension/retraction speeds.
- Failure to allow the aircraft to stabilise when flying on limited panel advise student to take their time.
- Failure to let the aircraft stabilise is the most common fault in limited panel instrument flying. The student checks for accuracy before the aircraft settles, makes a correction and starts a pendulum action. The instructor must emphasise the time needed for the aircraft to settle, if necessary, repeating the demonstrations visually.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• As before, do not move on until the student is ready. If necessary, break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.

# IMC Rating Lesson 3: Basic Instrument Flight (BIFM) 3

### Aims:

- To practice basic IF Flying (including limited panel).
- To practice unusual attitude recoveries.
- To learn how to make a position fix using radio-navigational aids.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

- Briefing on unusual attitude recovery (full and limited panel).
- Briefing on transition to visual flight on landing and on visibility requirements.
- Briefing on Navaid use and of TITS. (Tune Ident Twist Sense) or STIF (Select Tune Ident Function.

### Airex:

- 1. Practice basic IF flying (full and limited panel).
- 2. Teach unusual attitude recovery (full and limited panel).
- **3.** Teach position fixing using VOR/VOR, VOR/DME and NDB/DME as installed.
- **4.** Teach use of GNSS (Map, Nearest facility and Direct To navigation).
- 5. Practice bad weather circuit to land.
- **6.** Practice visual transition when landing.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

### Ex IMCR 3: BIFM 3

### **AIREX**:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-Off, Hood On.
- 2: REVISION: Full Panel: Give headings to fly. Climbs & descents to specified altitudes. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 3: REVISION: Limited Panel: Headings to fly. Give climbs & descents to spec alts. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 4: DEMO/Teach Unusual Attitude (UA) recovery.
- THROTTLE-ROLL-PITCH. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 6: Remind proc to Position Fix on VOR/DME or 2xVOR. STUDENT PRACTICE. NDB if fitted.
- 7: Remind basic VOR tracking TO and FROM beacon. STUDENT PRACTICE.
- 8: DEMO/Teach basic use of GNSS. Direct To Airfield. STUDENT PRACTICE flying back to airfield on GNSS.
- 10: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx circuit to full stop.

- Failure to comply with any aeroplane speed limitation e.g. flap or undercarriage extension/retraction speeds.
- Failure to allow the aircraft to stabilise when flying on limited panel advise student to take time.
- •As with all instrument flying exercises the most common fault is breakdown of scan. This can be due to over concentration on one instrument or failure to maintain a check of the flight Instruments when carrying out a power change or checklist drill. Practice, and the insistence by the instructor on the need to fly the aeroplane as a priority with all else being secondary will help to overcome this fault.
- •Another common fault applicable to all instrument flying is disorientation due to accepting sensory inputs from the brain instead of indications from the instruments. As exercises become more demanding the chances of the student suffering disorientation increase. Again, practice should help to prevent the problem but the student should understand that sensory indications must be ignored when instrument flying.

# **Practical Considerations**

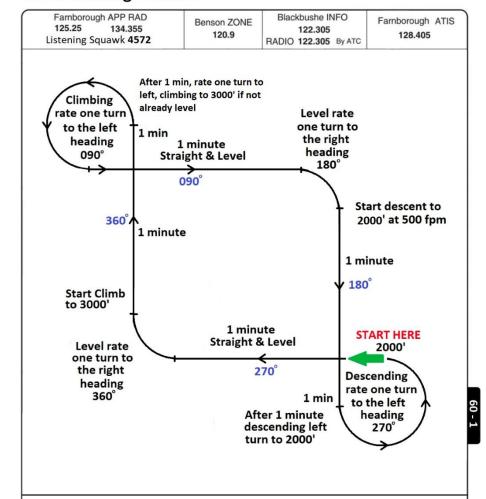
- Consider teaching the UA at the end of the lesson to avoid air-sickness.
- If time permits track a VOR radial to check understanding.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• To be added.

# **BIFM Training Profile 1**

60 - 1 23 Jul 20



#### **NOTES:**

Cruise at IAS or power setting as directed Carry out ice checks at regular intervals All turns to be rate one All climbs at maximum power All descents at 500 fpm

#### **EXTRA TASKS:**

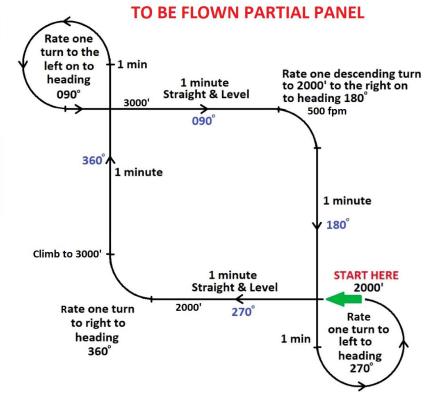
Change: Procedure

FREDA checks when able Copy down Farnborough ATIS

# **BIFM Training Profile 2**

60 - 2 10 Jun 20





#### **NOTES:**

Cruise at IAS or power setting as directed Carry out ice checks at regular intervals All turns to be rate one All climbs at maximum power All descents at 500 fpm

#### **EXTRA TASKS:**

FREDA checks when able Copy down Farnborough ATIS

# IMC Rating Lesson 4: Basic Instrument Flight (BIFM) 4

### Aims:

- To practice basic instrument flying.
- To learn how to track VOR radials both TO and FROM a VOR station.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

• Briefing on VOR Tracking.

### Airex:

- 1. Practice basic IF flying (simulated radar vectors).
- 2. Practice flying the pre-prepared profile (see below) to check progress.
- 3. Teach how to track TO a VOR using OBS or HSI.
- **4.** Teach how to track FROM a VOR using OBS or HSI.
- 5. Practice tracking in and out of nominated radials.

# **Common Student Errors**

- Chasing the needle rather than setting correction headings.
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Over or under-correcting typically should use 2x error.
- Fixating on the nav instrument resulting in over-correction advise student to fly the aircraft and cross check using VOR.
- Failing to anticipate a turn onto the outbound track approaching the VOR.
- Setting the radial on the course selector (rather than the reciprocal) when tracking TO the VOR.
- Turning a full 360° when attempting to intercept a radial.

# **Practical Considerations**

• Ideally, a VOR should be available in the local area for practice. In the coming months, many UK VORs will be decommissioned making this harder.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.

# 'Daisies at Compton™' - A Practical VOR Exercise

This practical and useful exercise require the availability of a VOR in uncontrolled airspace near the home airfield. This is becoming increasingly difficult, however CPT & DTY are good examples and expected to remain in service for several years to come.

The exercise begins several miles from the VOR by asking the student to fix themselves using VOR/DME. For example, the student is on the 135R. They are then told to track that radial to the VOR.

As they track inbound, tell them that on reaching the VOR, you want them to track out on the 270 radial:

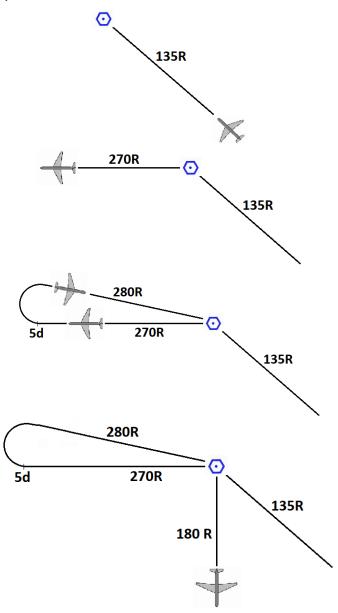
At about 5 miles outbound from the VOR, ask them where the 280 radial from the VOR is relative to them. They should point to the right.

Then tell them to track back to the VOR on the 280 radial.

If the student correctly sets the course to 100 on the OBS, the instrument will show a full left deflection and the student is often tempted to turn left. You can them remind them that they told you the radial was to the right, so they must turn right.

As they approach the beacon, tell them to prepare to leave on the 180 radial.

This is a good opportunity to talk about anticipation. If the student waits until they are overhead the VOR on this turn, they will overshoot and the intercept will be messy. Explain how to make a sensible anticipation in heading change.



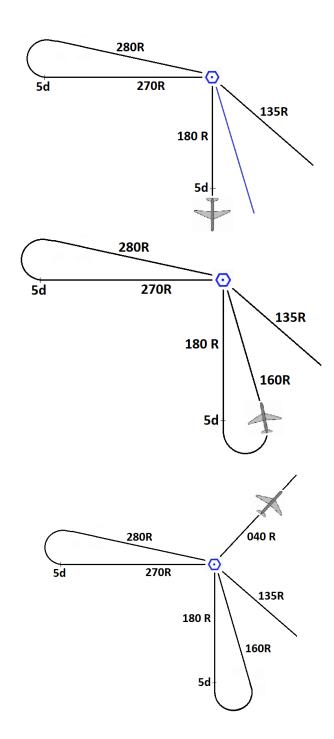
Again, at about 5 miles outbound from the VOR, ask them where the 170 radial from the VOR is relative to them. They should point to the left.

Then tell them to track back to the VOR on the 170 radial.

Hopefully this will result in a left turn and the course set to 350.

As they approach the VOR tell them to leave on the 040 radial

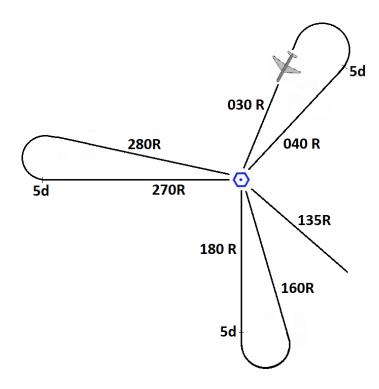
This gives another chance to check their anticipation of the turn.



Then, at 5 miles out, ask them to return to the VOR on the 030 radial. Hopefully, they work out correctly which way to turn.

Repeat this exercise until a good understanding is achieved.

The radial numbers do not matter. Pick any values that suit the exercise and airspace.



# Flight Prompt Card

### **Ex IMCR 4: VOR Tracking**

#### AIREX:

1: STUDENT taxi/instr checks. Take-Off. Hood On.

2: STUDENT to position fix on VOR/DME or VOR/VOR.

3: STUDENT to track inbound to VOR. 4: Ensure Ice/MSA checks carried out. 5: STUDENT to leave VOR on specified radial. 6: At ~5d STUDENT to return to VOR on specified radial (10° off outbound radial).

7: Approaching VOR STUDENT to leave VOR on specified different radial. 8: STUDENT repeats in and out of VOR until proficient. 9: STUDENT to leave VOR on specified different radial that leads back to airfield.

10: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx circ to full stop.

# **Debriefing**

• The student will probably find the lesson hard work with lots of concentration required. Try to encourage them to imagine themselves above, looking down on the situation. Practice with iPad Apps can be very helpful.

# **IMC Rating Lesson 5: Procedural Training 1: VOR Approaches**

### Aims:

- To learn to fly a VOR based instrument departure.
- To practice tracking VOR radials.
- To learn how to hold using a VOR.
- To learn how to fly a 45° procedure turn.
- To learn how to fly a VOR approach at CPT (or other VOR away from an airfield).
- To learn how to fly the go-around and missed approach.

### **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

- Briefing on VOR holding and approaches.
- Briefing on instrument approach charts.
- Briefing on instrument minima.

### Airex:

- 1. Teach a VOR based instrument departure.
- 2. Practice VOR tracking.
- **3.** Teach how to fly a 45° procedure turn.
- 4. Teach VOR holding.
- **5.** Teach a VOR approach at CPT or other VOR away from the airfield environment. Once level, and once with descent as published.
- 6. Teach how to fly the go-around following an instrument approach. Teach the missed approach procedure.
- **7.** Practice a VOR based instrument arrival.
- 8. Practice a bad weather circuit to land.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# Ex IMCR 5: VOR Approach in Local Area AIREX:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instr checks. Take-Off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP based on VOR.
- 3: DEMO/Teach hold entry and holding based on VOR.
- 4: DEMO/Teach 45° procedure turn. STUDENT
- PRACTICE. Ensure Ice/MSA checks carried out.
- 5: DEMO/Teach VOR app procedure at local VOR.
- STUDENT PRACTICE flying the proc level (no descent).
- 6: STUDENT PRACTICE flying the VOR procedure with descent & go-around.
- 9: STUDENT leaves VOR on radial that leads to airfield.
- 10: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

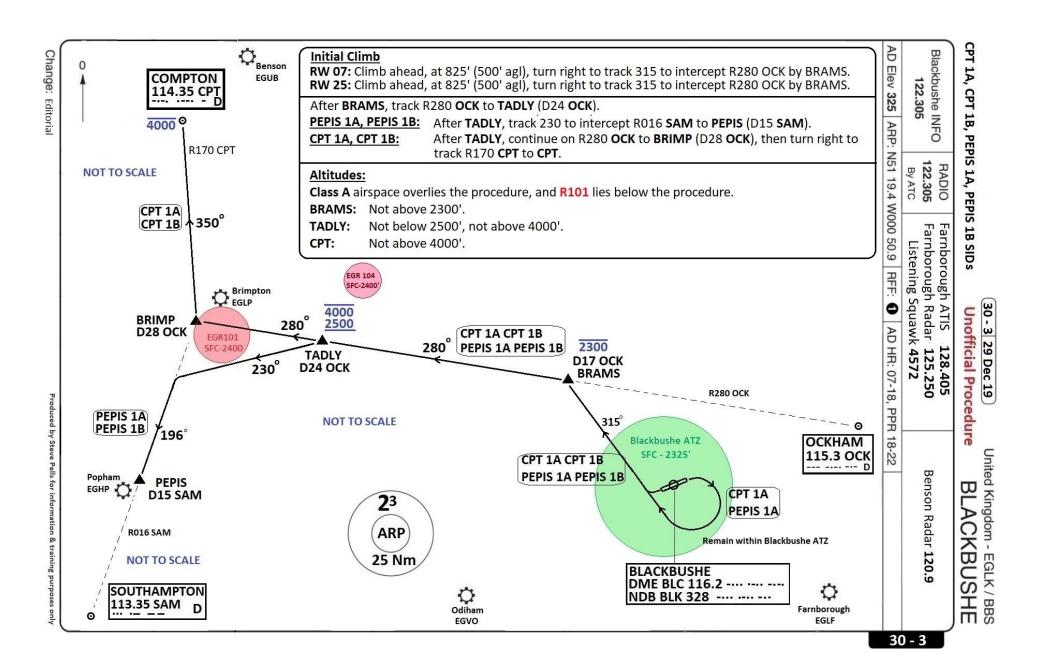
- Inappropriate corrections when off-track.
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to promptly execute a missed approach at the MDA.
- Forgetting to check for ice.
- Lack of MSA awareness.

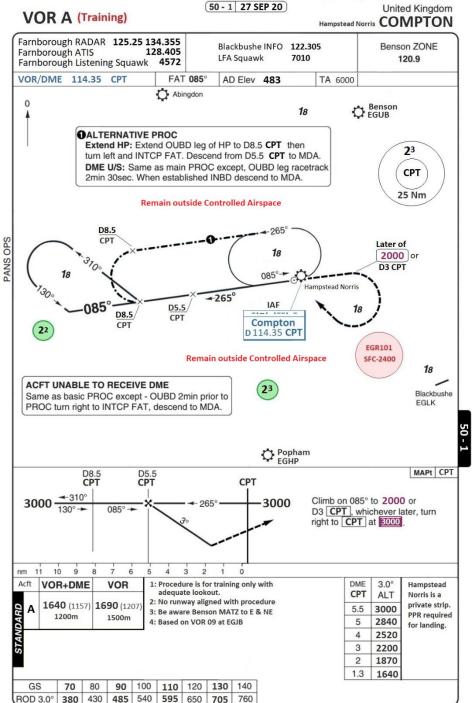
# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to simulate radio calls while practicing the VOR approach.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.

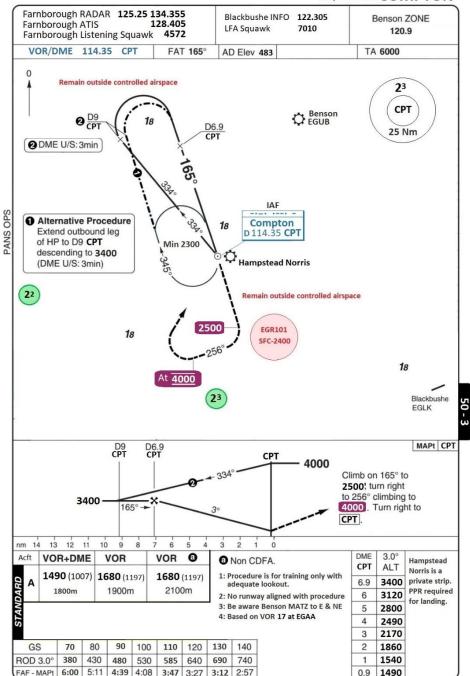




VOR C (Training)

50 - 3 27 SEP 20

United Kingdom
Hampstead Norris COMPTON



8

# IMC Rating Lesson 6: Procedural Training 2: VOR Approaches at an Airfield

### Aims:

- To practice flying a VOR based instrument departure.
- Further practice tracking VOR radials.
- To practice holding using a VOR at an airfield.
- To practice flying a VOR approach at an airfield.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

• Briefing on relevant instrument approach charts & minima.

### Airex:

- 1. Practice a VOR based instrument departure.
- 2. Further practice of VOR tracking.
- 3. Practice holding at a VOR at an airfield.
- 4. Practice flying a VOR approach at an airfield (instructor may take the radio to reduce workload).
- **5.** Practice flying the go-around and missed approach procedure.
- **6.** Practice a VOR based instrument arrival back to base.
- 7. Practice a bad weather circuit to land at base.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# Ex IMCR 6: VOR Approach at Airfield

#### AIREX:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP based on VOR tracking.
- 3: STUDENT to fly En-route leg. ATIS, Ice, MSA, PLOG.
- 4: STUDENT to fly STAR/ARR based on VOR tracking.
- 5: STUDENT to fly a VOR based hold if possible.
- 6: STUDENT to fly the VOR app with/without RT to g/a.
- 7: Repeat if possible. STUDENT PRACTICE
- 8: STUDENT to fly en-route back to home airfield.
- 9: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

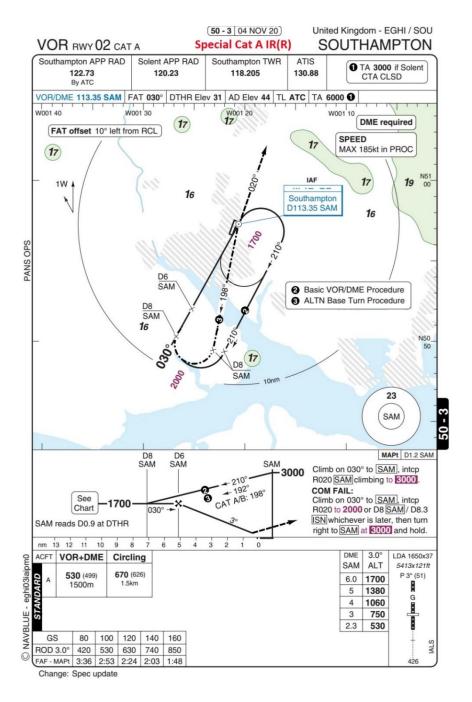
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to descend in accordance with the published profile.
- Failure to note the approach minima prior to flight.
- Failure to promptly initiate a missed approach at the appropriate point.
- Failure to follow the missed approach procedure.
- Forgetting to check for ice.
- Lack of MSA awareness.

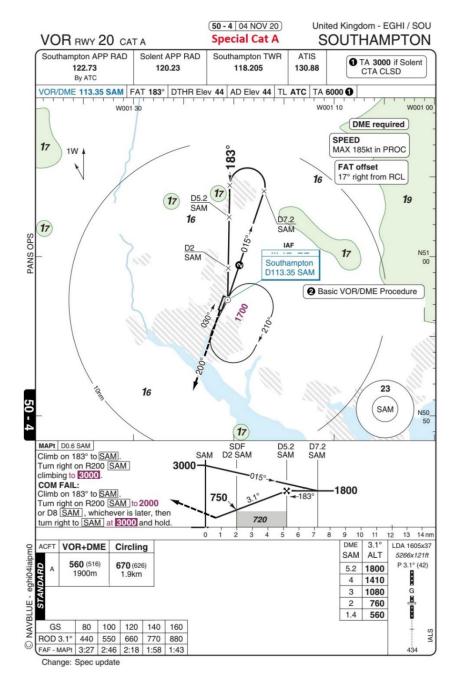
# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to handle radio calls while the student flies the VOR approach.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

- Do not overload the student.
- Do not take the student to an actual airfield unless he has successfully demonstrated ability in the local area.
- The most common fault in procedural flying is to over-concentrate on the relevant radio instrument and to ignore the flight instruments. This is particularly so during the ADF/VOR or ILS approaches when radial scan tends to break down. The instructor must expect this in the early stages of training and insist on the maintenance of the correct scan. If the fault persists intermittent covering of the radio instrument or demonstration of the correct procedure in visual conditions may help to eradicate the fault.
- Procedural flying increases the student's workload and may produce random faults. These should gradually disappear as experience is gained.





# **IMC Rating Lesson 7: Procedural Training 3: NDB Approaches (Optional)**

### Note:

• Many aircraft nowadays do not have a working ADF receiver. In this case, omit this exercise.

### Aims:

- To learn to fly an NDB based instrument departure.
- To practice tracking to and from an NDB.
- To learn how to hold using an NDB.
- To learn how to fly an NDB approach at WCO (or other NDB away from an airfield).
- To practice flying the go-around and missed approach.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

- Briefing on NDB holding and approaches.
- Briefing on relevant instrument approach chart & minima.

### Airex:

- 1. Teach an NDB based instrument departure.
- 2. Practice NDB tracking both to and from the beacon.
- 3. Teach NDB holding.
- 4. Teach an NDB approach at WCO or other NDB away from the airfield environment. Once level, and once with descent as published.
- **5.** Practice flying the go-around following an instrument approach.
- **6.** Practice an NDB based instrument arrival.
- 7. Practice a bad weather circuit to land.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# **Ex IMCR 7: NDB Approach in Local Area**

### AIREX:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instr checks. Take-Off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP based on NDB.
- 3: DEMO/Teach hold entry and holding based on NDB.
- 4: Revise/DEMO/Teach 45° procedure turn. STUDENT
- PRACTICE. Ensure Ice/MSA checks carried out. 5: DEMO/Teach NDB app procedure at local NDB.
- STUDENT PRACTICE flying the proc level (no descent).
- 6: STUDENT PRACTICE flying the NDB procedure with descent & go-around.
- 7: STUDENT routes to home airfield using NDB.
- 8: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

- Inappropriate corrections when off-track.
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to understand of allow for ADF dip.
- Forgetting to check for ice.
- Lack of MSA awareness.

# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to simulate radio calls while practicing the NDB approach.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.

#### 30 - 5 26 Jul 20 United Kingdom - EGLK / BBS **WOD & WCO SIDs Unofficial Procedure BLACKBUSHE** 125.25 134.355 Farnborough RADAR Blackbushe INFO 122.305 Benson ZONE 128.405 Farnborough ATIS LFA Squawk 7010 120.9 4572 30 - 5 Farnborough Listening Squawk AD Elev 325 | ARP: N51 19.4 W000 50.9 | RFF: 1 AD HR: 07-18, PPR 18-22 Daventry **NOT TO SCALE** DTY 116.4 D Remain outside controlled airspace Cranfield **DTY Transition** Cranfield **CIT Transition** 850 CIT 344° EGTC 20.4 Nm 22 Nm 042° Wind: \_\_ \_ \_ . \_ . \_ \_ \_ Westcott 335 WCO DTY 164R D20.4 GWC 353R D32.1 3200 Remain outside Benson EGUB controlled airspace $\bigcirc$ BLC 17d Wycombe Air Park Remain outside EGTB WCO 1A controlled airspace 2200' WCO 1B ---- ---- -Compton 353 White Waltham D114.35 CPT NOT TO SCALE **EGLM GWC 353R** 4000' NOT TO SCALE 101R CPT 2200' 3200 CPT Transition (see note) 281° 2200' Woodley D10 CPT

BLC D7.9

045°

500' agl

2200'

**EGR 104** Burghfield

SFC-2400'

**★353**°

2200

353R

For CPT Transition, after

climb not above 3200'.

reaching WOD, turn left to CPT

along 101 radial. At D10 CPT,

**EGR 101** Aldermarston SFC - 2400

(WOD)

25 Nm Goodwood NOT TO SCALE ① D114.75 GWC WOD 1A RW07 - After T/O at 500' agl turn right to airport overhead. Intercept GWC 353R to WOD. Not above 1800'. WOD 1B RW25 - After T/O at 500' agl turn right to track 045° to intercept GWC 353R to WOD. Not above 2200'. WCO 1A RW07 - As WOD 1A then track 353 to WCO. At 17d BLC not above 3200'. Transitions to DTY & CIT WCO 1B RW25 - As WOD 1A then track 353 to WCO. At 17d BLC not above 3200'. Transitions to DTY & CIT Change: Re-indexed

Produced by Steve Pells for information & training purposes only

352 WOD

position WOD.

LFA

1800'

Aircraft without ADF should

follow GWC 353R to D7.9 BLC for

BLACKBUSHE DME BLC 116.2 ---- ---

NDB BLK 328 ---- ---

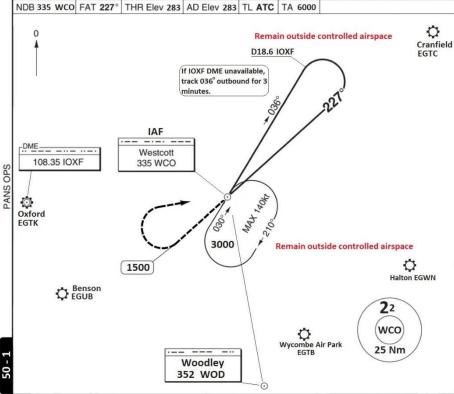
D

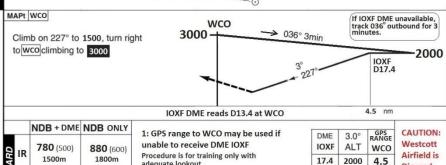
FARNBOROUGH CTR

Farnborough

SFC - 3500'

50 - 1 | 22 Dec 19 United Kingdom NDB A (Training) Special Cat A IR(R) WESTCOTT (Disused) 125.09 Oxford APP Farnborough APP RAD Blackbushe INFO Benson ZONE Oxford RAD 125.09 MON-SAT 08-18, SUN 0830-1800 Oxford ATIS 136.23 132.8 125.25 122.305 120.9 Listening Squawk 4572 RADIO 122.305 By ATC NDB 335 WCO FAT 227° THR Elev 283 AD Elev 283 TL ATC TA 6000





							10	DAF DIN	ne read	12 DT2	4 at WCO				
Г		NDI	B + DME	ND	B ONL	Υ .	. CDC		- WCO		o wood if	DME		GDS	CAUTION
a	IR	78	<b>80</b> (500)	880 (600)		) u	1: GPS range to WCO may be used if unable to receive DME IOXF						3.0° ALT 2000	GPS RANGE WCO	Westcott Airfield is Disused
STANDARD	iiv	1500m	1800m			Procedure is for training only with adequate lookout.					17.4				
ð							No runway aligned with procedure				17	1840	4	Disuseu	
ΤA	IR	980 (700)		1080 (800)		0) P	Procedure based on EHLE NDB 23					16.1	1540	3	
S	(R)		1500m	1800m	~/					15.2	1240	2			
_												14.3	940	1	
	GS	S	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	]	13.4	780	0	
R	OD	3.0°	380	430	485	540	595	650	705	760	1				

NDB B (Training)

50 - 2 12JUN19 Special Cat A IR(R)

United Kingdom
WESTCOTT (Disused)

Farnborough APP RAD 132.8 125.25 Listening Squawk 4572  NDB 335 WCO FAT 080° THR E  0 Alternative procec Extend outbound le 2min 30sec descen	dure eg of hold for	Blackbushe INFO 122.305 RADIO 122.305 By ATC 283 TL ATC TA 6000  Remain outside cor	Oxford RAD 12 MON-SAT 08-18, SL Oxford ATIS 1:	25.09 25.09 25.09 36.23 Cranfield EGTC
Alternative proced     Extend outbound le     2min 30sec descen	dure eg of hold for		ntrolled airspace	Cranfield
Alternative proced Extend outbound le 2min 30sec descen	eg of hold for	Remain outside cor	ntrolled airspace	Cranfield
turn left to FAT.				
DME	-080° -246°	33	IAF Vestcott S5 WCO ME reads D13.4 at W	CO
Remain  Benson EGUB	outside controlled	airspace	На	<b>⇔</b> alton EGWN
22 wco 25 Nm	·-	Woodley 352 WOD	Cycombe Air Park EGTB	
	•			MAPt WCO
1900	2min 30sec 246° =	Climt	o on 080° to <b>2000</b> , eft to <u>WCO</u> climbin	9
	IOXF DI	ME reads D13.4 at WCO		
R 1180 (897) adequate look No runway ali	or training only with			CAUTION: Westcott Airfield is Disused

9

# **IMC Rating Lesson 8: Procedural Training 4: Radar Approaches**

### Aims:

- To learn how to fly an SRA or PAR VOR approach at an airfield.
- To practice flying the go-around and missed approach.

### **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

- Briefing on SRA and/or PAR approaches.
- Briefing on the relevant instrument approach charts.
- Briefing on instrument minima.

### Airex:

- 1. Teach an SRA approach at an airfield.
- 2. Teach how to fly the go-around following an instrument approach. Teach the missed approach procedure.
- **3.** Teach a PAR approach including missed approach at an airfield.
- **4.** Practice a bad weather circuit to land.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# **Ex IMCR 8: Radar Approaches at Airfield**

#### **AIREX**

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP as required.
- 3: STUDENT to fly En-route leg. ATIS, Ice, MSA, PLOG.
- 4: STUDENT to fly STAR/ARR as required.
- 5: DEMO/Teach/Coach SRA app procedure at AD.

STUDENT PRACTICE.

6: DEMO/Teach/Coach PAR app procedure at AD.

STUDENT PRACTICE.

- 7: Repeat if possible. STUDENT PRACTICE
- 8: STUDENT to fly en-route back to home airfield.
- 9: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

# **Common Student Errors**

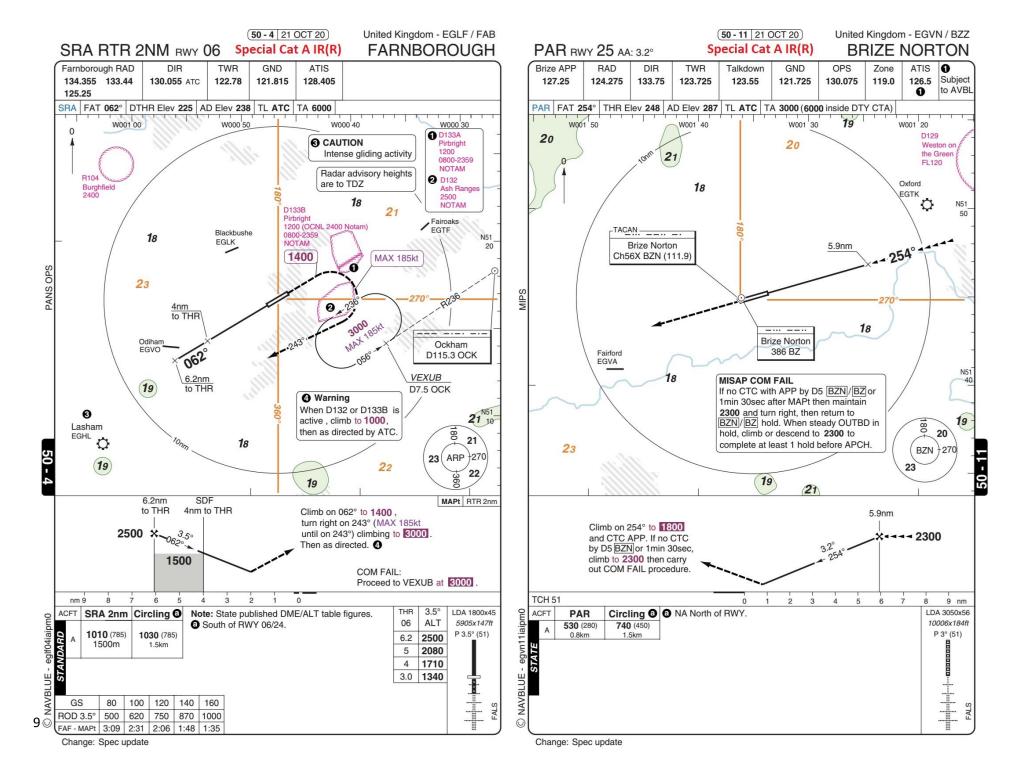
- Inaccurate headings and altitudes when under radar control.
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Forgetting to check for ice.
- Lack of MSA awareness.

# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to handle radio calls while the student is flying the approaches.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, break this lesson down into 2 or more smaller lessons.



# **IMC Rating Lesson 9: Procedural Training 5: ILS Approaches**

### Aims:

- Further practice flying a VOR or NDB based instrument departure.
- Further practice tracking VOR or NDBs.
- Further practice holding at an airfield.
- To learn to fly an ILS approach at an airfield.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

• Briefing on ILS approaches.

### Airex:

- 1. Practice a VOR or NDB based instrument departure.
- 2. Further practice of VOR or NDB tracking.
- 3. Practice holding at an airfield.
- 4. Teach flying an ILS approach at an airfield.
- 5. Practice flying the go-around and missed approach procedure.
- **6.** Practice a VOR or NDB based instrument arrival back to base.
- **7.** Practice a bad weather circuit to land at base.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# Ex IMCR 9: ILS Approaches at Airfield

### AIREX:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP as required.
- 3: STUDENT to fly En-route leg. ATIS, Ice, MSA, PLOG.
- 4: STUDENT to fly STAR/ARR/Hold as required.
- 5: DEMO/Teach ILS app procedure to g/a. STUDENT
- PRACTICE. Procedural or radar-vectored.
- 6: Repeat if possible. STUDENT PRACTICE
- 7: STUDENT to fly en-route back to home airfield.
- 8: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

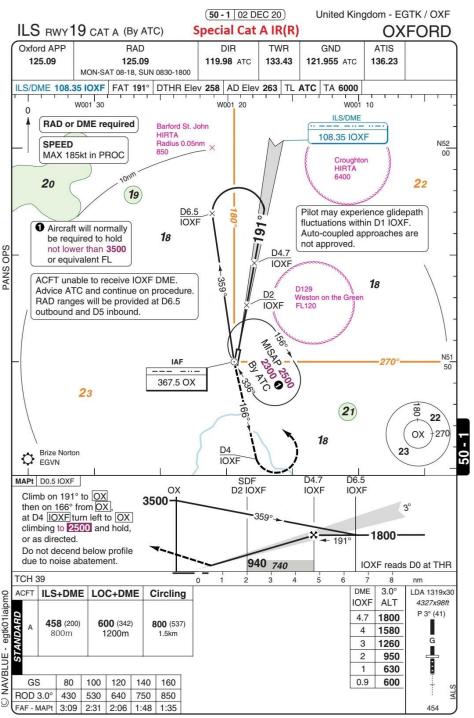
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to descend in accordance with the published profile.
- Overly large corrections when off-track.
- Failure to establish a target rate of descent on the approach.
- Controlling rate of descent with power instead of pitch. Power controls speed.
- Failure to note the approach minima prior to flight.
- Failure to initiate a missed approach at the appropriate point.
- Failure to follow the missed approach procedure.

# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to handle radio calls while the student flies the second ILS approach.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, take control for a while to allow them to relax.



Change: Spec update

# **IMC Rating Lesson 10: Procedural Training 6: RNP Approaches (Optional)**

### Note:

• Not all aircraft are equipped with a suitable GNSS receiver for RNP approaches. If not, then omit this exercise.

### Aims:

- To learn to fly a GNSS based instrument departure.
- To learn to fly an RNP approach at an airfield.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

• Briefing on RNP approaches (2D & 3D as appropriate to aircraft equipment).

### Airex:

- 1. Teach a GNSS based instrument departure.
- 2. Further practice of programming and flying direct to waypoints using the GNSS.
- 3. Teach flying an RNP approach at an airfield (2D or 3D).
- **4.** Practice flying the go-around and missed approach procedure.
- 5. Practice a GNSS based instrument arrival back to base.
- **6.** Practice a bad weather circuit to land at base.

# **Flight Prompt Card**

# **Ex IMCR 10: RNP Approaches at Airfield**

### AIREX:

- 1: STUDENT taxi/instrment checks. Take-off. Hood On.
- 2: STUDENT to fly SID/DEP as required.
- 3: STUDENT to fly En-route leg. ATIS, Ice, MSA, PLOG.
- 4: STUDENT to fly STAR/ARR/Hold as required.
- 5: DEMO/Teach/Coach RNP app procedure to g/a.

#### STUDENT PRACTICE.

- 6: Repeat if possible. STUDENT PRACTICE
- 7: STUDENT to fly en-route back to home airfield.
- 8: STUDENT PRACTICE Bad Wx Circuit to full stop.

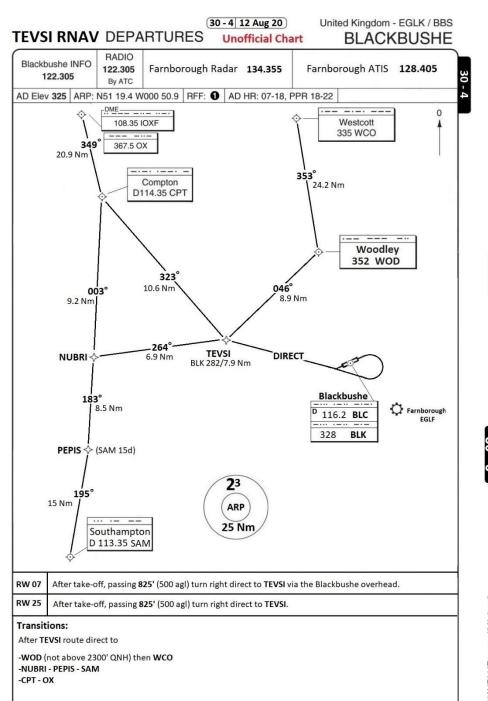
- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to descend in accordance with the published profile.
- Overly large corrections when off-track.
- Failure to establish a target rate of descent on the approach.
- Controlling rate of descent with power instead of pitch. Power controls speed.
- Failure to note the approach minima prior to flight.
- Failure to initiate a missed approach at the appropriate point.
- Failure to follow the missed approach procedure.

# **Practical Considerations**

• The instructor may wish to handle radio calls while the student flies the second RNP approach.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, take control for a while to allow them to relax.



RNP RWY 27 **BRISTOL** Special Cat A Bristol APP RAD DIR **TWR ATIS** 126.03 125.65 136.08 133.85 By ATC RNAV EGNOS CH46169 E27A FAT 268° DTHR Elev 601 AD Elev 622 TL ATC TA 6000 W002 50 W002 40 W002 30 W002 20 RNP APCH TEMP RESTRICTION Baro VNAV proc NA below -10°C 1W A Request RNP APCH on first N51 contact with Bristol RAD 30 Initial APCH 22 MAX 210kt 271° **ELROV** GD27F 2500 MAX 210kt PANS OPS MAX 185kt 268 4 LNAV only RW27 2nm to RW27 22 \_ ... . \_ . . -DME \_\_\_\_\_ Bristol N51 414 BRI 20 110.15 IBTS **BAXUN** MAX 210kt 22 4000 D119 088° → **Bridgwater Bay** 5000 NOTAM BAXUN 30 3000 31 ARP 50 - 6 Hinkley point 5.8m to RW27 MAPt RW27 SDF LNAV only GD27F **ELROV** Climb on 268° to 3000 2nm to RW27 then as directed. See 2500 COM FAIL: Chart At 2500 Climb on 268°, revert to conventional navigation. At D4.7 IBTS turn right to -1290BRI at 3000 1400 1130 TCH 50 0 1 2 3 4 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 nm 2 3.0° LDA 1881x45 ACFT LPV Circling @ Circling THR LNAV/VNAV LNAV 6171x147ft 1050 (428) 1050 (428) 27 ALT STANDARD 1.5km P 3° (50) 5.8 2500 851 (250) 950 (349) 1000 (399) 5 2250 800m 1200m 1400m 4 1930 3 1610 2 1290 GS 120 | 140 | 160 | **a** North of RWY 09/27 only. 1.1 1000 80 100 430 540 640 750 860 4:21 3:28 2:54 2:29 2:10 FAF-MAPt 570 Change: Spec update

**50 - 6** 02 SEP 20

United Kingdom - EGGD / BRS

# **IMC Rating Lesson 11: Procedural Training 7: IMC Rating Test Profile**

### Note:

This is effectively a mock IMC rating test. Adjust according to aircraft equipment. Repeat this lesson as required.

### Aims:

• To practice the test profile for the IMC rating skill test.

# **Pre-Flight Briefing:**

• Briefing on approaches to be flown and exercised to be undertaken.

### Airex:

- 1. Student flies a suitable route to destination airfield on instruments.
- 2. Student holds if required.
- 3. Student flies first approach, go-around and missed approach procedure.
- **4.** Student flies second approach, go-around and missed approach procedure.
- 5. Student begins an instrument flight back to base. Instructor directs any VOR, NDB or GNSS tracking as required.
- **6.** Instructor gives the student some full panel unusual attitudes to recover from.
- 7. Instructor directs some limited panel flying including timed compass turns and unusual attitudes.
- 8. Student flies a bad weather circuit back at base to land.

# **Common Student Errors**

- Failing to note the upper wind during flight planning.
- Failure to plan a route to destination above the local MSA.
- Failure to copy ATIS during cruise.
- Poor radio communications.
- Failure to descend in accordance with the published profile.
- Overly large corrections when off-track.
- Failure to establish a target rate of descent on the approach.
- Controlling rate of descent with power instead of pitch. Power controls speed.
- Failure to note the approach minima prior to flight.
- Failure to initiate a missed approach at the appropriate point.
- Failure to follow the missed approach procedure.

# **Common Instructor Errors**

• Do not overload the student. If necessary, take control for a while to allow them to relax.

# **Example Pre-Flight Briefing:**

# Blackbushe - Cranfield IR(R) Training

A Study Guide by Steve Pells Issue 3 27May20

The purpose of this document is to provide guidance to students under training for the IR(R). Charts shown are for information only. Check latest chart dates. Any aircraft speeds and power settings are for a PA28-161/181.

### 1. Flight Planning:

Call Cranfield ATC in advance, ideally several days in advance to secure the approaches. They will want to know what time UTC you will arrive at the CIT NDB or other IAF, and which approaches you would like. Approaches at Cranfield are procedural.

The suggested route to Cranfield is via Woodley and Westcott NDBs: EGLK – WOD – WCO - CIT. Suggested initial altitude of 2000' to remain below controlled airspace. Once closer to WCO, further climb is possible. It is shown below.



On this routing, it is possible to depart VFR and pick up a basic or traffic service from Farnborough after departure. Remember to keep below the base of controlled airspace (initially remain below 2500' QNH. Once approaching WCO you can climb to 3000' or as required.

To remain higher if needed, route via CPT instead.

After WCO you can frecall Cranfield approach for further instructions.

A typical Navigation Log for the route is shown below:

Waypoint	Route	wDir wSp	TAS	Track	TH	МН	GS	Dist	ETE	ATE	Fuel	Fuel
📥 EGLK	Altitude	Temp (dev)	1,73	WCA	Var	1-111		סוכנ	ETO	OTA	EFR	AFR
N 51*19.43* W 000*50.85*	-Ð+	269° 8	71	351°	345°	346°	69	4.0	3.5		0.0	
→ TOC		9°C (-6°)	/ '	-6°	+1°	340	09	٦.0	3.5		0.0	
N 51*23.39' W 000*51.81'	-Ð+	281° 13	110	351°	345°	346°	105	3.8	2.2		0.0	
<b>WOD</b> 352	3000	4°C (-5°)	110	-6°	+1°				5.7		0.0	
WOD 352 N 51'27.17' W 000'52.73'	-Ð+	283° 13	110	353°	346°	348°	105	24.2	14		0.0	
₩ WCO 335	3000	4°C (-6°)	110	-6°	+2°	340	103	24.2	20		0.0	
WCO 335 N 51*51.18' W 000*57.74'	-Ð+	281° 14	110	44°	38°	40°	117	15.7	8.0		0.0	
TOD	3000	3°C (-6°)	110	-6°	+2°	40	117	13.7	28		0.0	
N 52°02.42' W 000°40.04'	-Ð+	279° 15	108	44°	38°	39°	117	2.7	1.4		0.0	
▲ EGTC		3°C (-6°)	108	-7°	+2°	39	117	2.7	29		0.0	
N 52*04.33*												

### 2. Engine Start & Taxi at Blackbushe:

Engine start is as normal, but before taxi, set up as many of the navaids as you can for your departure. Once ready for taxi, think ahead about your taxi route and where you will be able to fit instrument checks in to natural turns in the route.

### 3. After Take-Off:

As soon as possible after take-off, your instructor will take control to allow you to put on your goggles/hood. Once back in control, and settled, try to get the navaids idented systematically. Select a suitable course and route to WOD NDB, below the base of the controlled airspace (say 2000'). Carry out the after take-off Checklist.

### 4. Cruise:

Once level, and every 15-20 minutes thereafter, carry out a FREDA check and an icing check. Many students become lazy about altitude keeping at this stage, so do try to keep your altitude accurately. Do not let a deviation of more than 100' go uncorrected!

After WOD, route direct to WCO and then either the CIT, or other IAF if flying an RNAV approach. Once you get to the IAF, things will start to get busy, so use the leg to and from WCO to get ahead of the game.

Tune and copy the ATIS, and then contact Cranfield Approach. They will probably clear you direct to the CIT or IAF and assign an altitude (usually 3500' or 4500'. They will also ask your training requirements including any holds required. Holding is not required for the IR(R) test, but if Cranfield is busy, you may be asked to hold anyway. **NOTE:** There are no published holds for the RNAV procedures at Cranfield.

This is also a good time to set up the navaids for holding and the approach. Remember to **Tune**, **Ident**, **Twist** and make sure that the output is **Sensible** (TITS) i.e. VLOC or GPS as required on the Garmin etc.

Navaids at Cranfield from the UK AIP: ------→

Note the range of the CIT NDB and do not try to use or ident it beyond this range.

Remember to set your altimeters to the Cranfield QNH.

#### EGTC AD 2.19 RADIO NAVIGATION AND LANDING AIDS

Type of Aid CAT of ILS/MLS MAG Var/VOR Declination	Ident	Frequency	Hours of Operation	Position of transmitting antenna coordinates	Elevation of DME transmitting antenna	Remarks
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
ILS/LLZ I 0.38°W (2019)	ICR	108.900 MHz	Mon-Fri 0830-1900 (0730- 1800); Sat, Sun & PH 0900-1800 (0800- 1700).	520346.01N 0003733.78W		(RWY 21) ILS not to be used for practice auto- coupled landings. LOC may show fluctuations due to road traffic.
ILS/GP	ICR	329.300 MHz	Mon-Fri 0830-1900 (0730- 1800); Sat, Sun & PH 0900-1800 (0800- 1700).	520432.13N 0003639.93W		3° ILS Ref Datum Hgt 54 FT.
NDB (L) 0.37°W (2019)	CIT	850.000 kHz	Mon-Fri 0830-1900 (0730- 1800); Sat, Sun & PH 0900-1800 (0800- 1700).	520748.56N 0003324.77W		Range 15 NM.
ILS/DME	ICR	26X 108.900 MHz	Mon-Fri 0830-1900 (0730- 1800); Sat, Sun & PH 0900-1800 (0800- 1700).	520424.52N 0003702.87W	366 FT	(RWY 21) On AD. DME freq paired with ILS I-CR. Zero range is indicated at THR of Runway 21.

# 5. Holding at CIT:

As you enter the hold:

A/C. G-LT, entering the hold at CIT at 4500'.

ATC: G-LT, Roger.

Remember to plan the hold on the ground before departure, so that if a hold is required, the brain work is already complete. Coming from WCO, joining the hold at CIT needs some prior planning as it is not a direct entry.

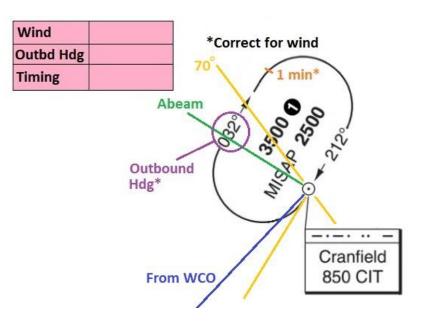
Once joined, remember to turn outbound as soon as the ADF needle flips, and to make all turns a steady rate one. Start your timing when wings are level or abeam, WHICHEVER COMES LATER.

ATC: G-LT, Descent to altitude 3500' in the CIT hold.

A/C. Descent to altitude 3500' in the hold, G-LT.

ATC: G-LT, Report ready for the procedure.

A/C. Ready for the procedure, G-LT.



# 6. Procedural ILS 21 Approach - Primary Procedure from CIT:

ATC: G-LT, on reaching the CIT, cleared procedural ILS approach runway 21. Report beacon outbound.

A/C: On reaching the CIT, cleared procedural ILS approach runway 21. Wilco, G-LT.

As you pass over the beacon and the ADF needle flips, turn left to track 018, set 2000 rpm and descend at about 500 fpm to 2500'. Do not descend below 2500'!

A/C: G-LT, Beacon outbound. ATC: G-LT, Roger, report localiser established.

A/C: Wilco, G-LT

Once level at 2500', continue outbound, monitoring the ADF needle to ensure correct tracking away from the CIT. At 8.6 DME I-CR, begin a right rate one turn on to an intercept heading. 30-45 degrees from the final approach track normally works well, so depending on the wind, a heading of around 170-180 degrees will work. Do not let the aircraft descend below 2500' during this turn!

As soon as the localiser needle starts to move, turn to follow the inbound track. Remember the needle is much more sensitive than the VOR needle.

A/C: G-LT, Localiser Established.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, descend on the ILS, contact Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930.

A/C: Descend on the ILS, Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930, G-LT.

When you contact tower, they sometimes give you non-standard missed approach instructions which you need to be ready to copy. This part of the flight can be very busy, but you need to concentrate on accurate instrument flying.

A/C: G-LT, ILS Runway 21.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, standard missed approach.

A/C: Standard missed approach, G-LT.

Now track the localiser and watch the glide slope pointer and DME distance.

**EGTC ILS 21 Primary Procedure** Keep an eye on the 6 localizer during the turn Rate One turn to intercept hdg, not below 2500'! ILS/DME D8.6 108.9 ICR **ICR** G-LT, Localizer established 7 4 Approach and Pre-Landing Checks Fly Localizer Trk accurately 8 3 "G-LT, Beacon Outbound" 018° Wait for Glide Slope, monitor DME 9 Turn on to Trk 018, set 2000 rpm, D6.6 descend to 2500' at ~500 fpm. Set 2000 rpm, start descent 10 with GS at pre-calculated rate 1 START HERE Check Alt 1560' at CIT 11 Watch altimeter carefully & start 12 missed approach at minimums IAF \_.\_. \_\_ Cranfield 17 After Take-Off Checks 850 CIT **D3.6 ICR** Full Power, Pitch Nose Up, 1500 Climb at 80-100 kts G-LT, Going Around 14 Turn left to CIT, continue climb to 2500 Climb straight ahead to 1500' 15

As you approach 6.6 DME, the GS pointer should centralise. Without delay, set 2000 rpm, and descend at your pre-calculated rate of descent (typically 400-500 fpm). Remember that as you descend, the wind is likely to change and so your ROD target will change too. The groundspeed readout from any GPS or DME unit here is very useful in calculating the required rate of descent.

## ATC: G-LT, Cleared low approach and go-around. Wind 250 at 15.

A/C: Clear low approach and go-around, G-LT.

At CIT, check your altitude is ~1560'. From this point on, the localiser and glide slope become very sensitive, so accurate flying is needed. The localiser and glideslope needles must be kept within half scale deflection or a missed approach must be carried out. Keep an eye on the altimeter, to make sure you don't go below your minimums.

Just before minimums, perform the go-around procedure: Full power, nose up, climb away at 80-100 kts

A/C: G-LT, Going around.

ATC: G-LT, Roger.

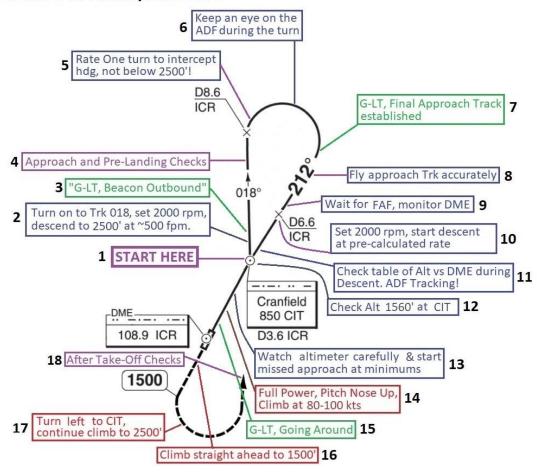
Then it is just a matter of flying either the published missed approach procedure, or the amended one if given. Once level, do not forget the after take-off checklist.

## 8. Procedural NDB Approach RW 21 - Primary Procedure from CIT:

ATC: G-LT, on reaching the CIT, cleared procedural NDB Approach runway 21. Report beacon outbound.

A/C: On reaching the CIT, cleared procedural NDB Approach runway 21. Wilco, G-LT.

## **EGTC NDB 21 Primary Procedure**



As you pass over the beacon and the ADF needle flips, turn left to track 018, set 2000 rpm and descend at about 500 fpm to 2500'. Do not descend below 2500'!

A/C: G-LT. Beacon outbound.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, report final approach track established.

A/C: G-LT, Wilco

Once level at 2500', continue outbound, monitoring the ADF needle to ensure correct tracking away from the CIT. At 8.6 DME I-CR, begin a right rate one turn on to an intercept heading. 30-45 degrees from the final approach track normally works well, so depending on the wind, a heading of around 170-180 degrees will work. Do not let the aircraft descend below 2500' during this turn!

Once the ADF needle is about 5 degrees from the final approach track (i.e. 207), turn to follow the inbound track. Remember the needle suffers dip in the turn.

A/C: G-LT, Final approach track Established.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, descend with the procedure, contact Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930.

A/C: Descend with the procedure, Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930, G-LT.

When you contact tower, they sometimes give you non-standard missed approach instructions which you need to be ready to copy. This part of the flight can be very busy, but you need to concentrate on accurate instrument flying.

A/C: G-LT, NDB/DME approach Runway 21.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, standard missed approach.

A/C: Standard missed approach, G-LT.

Now track the Final Approach Track (FAT) at 2500' and monitor the DME distance. As you approach 6.6 DME, it is time to descend. Remember: You can only descend on the procedure if you are within 5 degrees of the final approach track!

Without delay, set 2000 rpm, and descend at your pre-calculated rate of descent (typically 400-500 fpm). Remember that as you descend, the wind is likely to change and so your ROD target will change too.

During the descent, every mile, check the table of DME vs altitude to see if you are on the correct profile. If not, make a small correction to your ROD. At the CIT, check your altitude is ~1560'. Keep the ADF needle pointing to 212 prior to the CIT, and 032 afterwards. Keep an eye on the altimeter, to make sure you don't go below your minimums. Just before minimums, perform the go-around procedure: Full power, nose up, climb away at 80-100 kts

A/C: G-LT, Going around.

ATC: G-LT, Roger.

Then it is just a matter of flying either the published missed approach procedure, or the amended one if given. Once level, do not forget the after take-off checklist.

## 11. Procedural RNP (RNAV) Approach RW 21 via ADSON:

There are no navaids required for the approach, but the missed approach requires the CIT NDB. Some distance away, load the RNP (RNAV) 21 procedure via ADSON into the GPS. Make sure GPS rather than VLOC is displayed.

ATC: G-LT, direct to position ADSON, descend to altitude 2500', cleared RNAV Approach runway 21. Report ADSON.

A/C: Direct to ADSON, descend to altitude 2500', cleared RNAV approach runway 21 via ADSON. Wilco, G-LT.

Now go to the GPS, and activate the approach. This should set ADSON as the active waypoint. Track towards ADSON. Set 2000 rpm and descend at about 500 fpm to 2500'. Do not descend below 2500'! As you pass ADSON, the GPS will command a turn right to track 142. Follow this track as accurately as you can.

A/C: G-LT, ADSON. ATC: G-LT, Roger, report final approach track established. A/C: G-LT, Wilco

TC21I is now the active waypoint. Approaching TC21I the GPS will command another right turn to the FAT of 212 degrees. Do not let the aircraft descend below 2500' during this turn!

A/C: G-LT, Final approach track Established. ATC: G-LT, Roger, descend with the procedure, contact Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930.

A/C: Descend with the procedure, Cranfield Tower frequency 134.930, G-LT.

When you contact tower, they sometimes give you non-standard missed approach instructions which you need to be ready to copy. This part of the flight can be very busy, but you need to concentrate on accurate instrument flying.

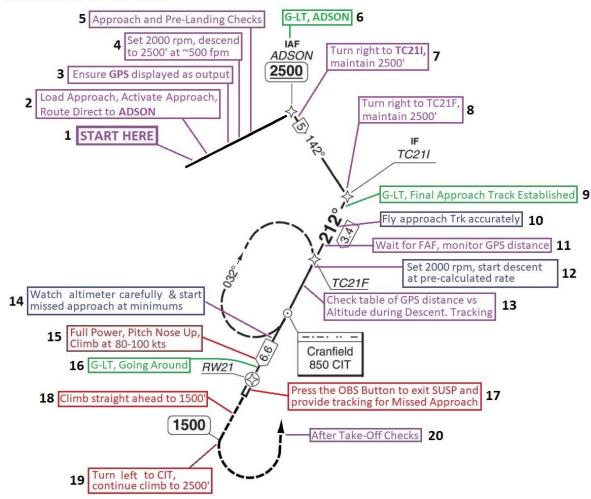
A/C: G-LT, RNAV approach Runway 21.

ATC: G-LT, Roger, standard missed approach.

A/C: Standard missed approach, G-LT.

TC21F (the FAF) is now the active waypoint. Track along the Final Approach Track (FAT) at 2500' and monitor the GPS distance. By 2 Nm from the FAF, the mode annunciation should have changed to APR.

#### **EGTC RNAV 21 via ADSON**



Without delay, set 2000 rpm, and descend at your precalculated rate of descent (typically 400-500 fpm). Remember that as you descend, the wind is likely to change and so your ROD target will change too. During the descent, every mile, check the table of GPS distance vs altitude to see if you are on the correct profile. If not, make a small correction to your ROD. Keep the tracking within half scale deflection. Keep an eye on the altimeter, to make sure you don't go below your minimums.

Just before minimums, perform the go-around procedure: Full power, nose up, climb away at 80-100 kts

As you approach TC21F, it is time to descend. **Remember:** You can only descend on the procedure if you are within half scale deflection of the final app track!

A/C: G-LT, Going around. ATC: G-LT, Roger.

Press the OBS button on the GPS to remove the SUSP feature and allow GPS tracking for the missed approach. Then it is just a matter of flying either the published missed approach procedure, or the amended one if given. Once level, do not forget the after take-off checklist.

## 13. Return to Blackbushe:

For the return flight to Blackbushe, much will be the same. You are likely to transit back via WCO at 3000' in much the same way. Descending later on track to WOD to remain clear of controlled airspace. Remember FREDA and Icing checks.

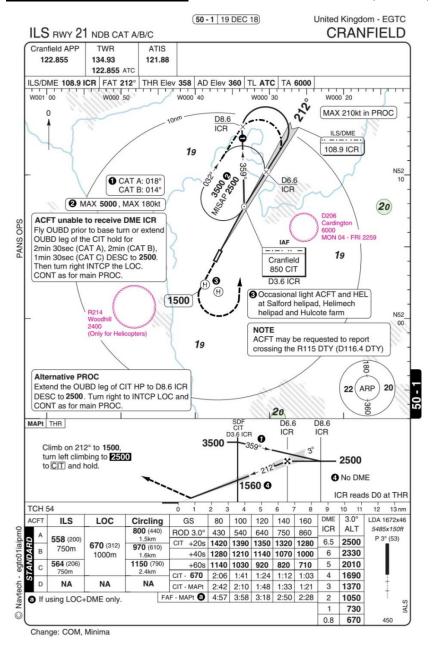
Changing over to Farnborough radar 125.250 approaching WCO for a basic or traffic service into Blackbushe.

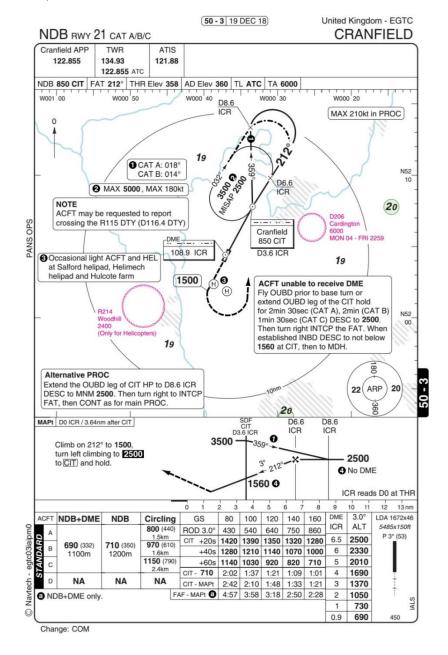
### **14. Common Errors:**

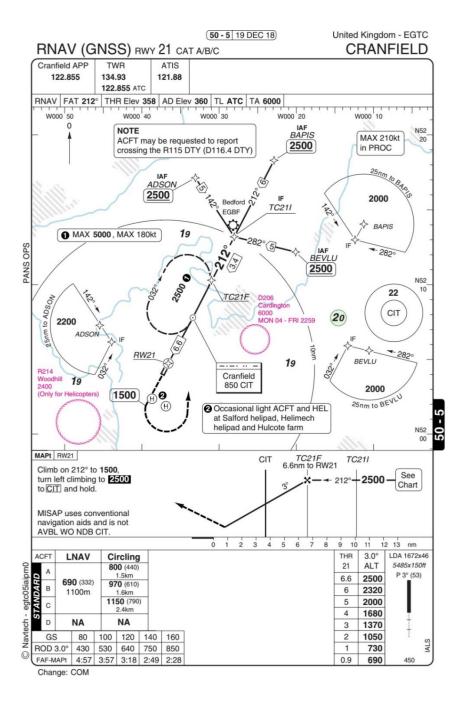
- 1: Forgetting to do the after take-off checks
- 2: No FREDA or icing checks
- 3: Poor altitude keeping in the cruise
- 4: Failure to ident navaids before use
- 5: Lack of forward planning, resulting in arriving at CIT and not ready for the approach
- 6: Improper tracking outbound from the NDB
- 7: Failure to get the descent going on the outbound leg resulting in the a/c being high on profile.
- 8: Failure to monitor the DME outbound, resulting in a late right turn.
- 9: Loss of altitude in the base turn due to distraction.
- 10: Turning all the way to 212 in the base turn rather than an intercept heading. Can lead to poor intercept.
- 11: Failure to promptly intercept the localiser on first movement of needle.
- 12: High workload inbound can lead to altitude excursions or poor tracking.
- 13: Failure to monitor the DME can result in missing the FAF/FAP.
- 14: Improper NDB/ADF tracking towards the beacon.
- 15: Failure to maintain an appropriate ROD on final.
- 16: Failure to monitor the profile with the ALT vs DME tables.
- 17: Descending below DA/MDA.
- 18: Go-around manoeuvre not positive enough, resulting in level segment or even descent.
- 19: Failure to carry out approach checks or pre-landing checks. Instructor can tell by Fuel Pump position!
- 20: Failure to accurately navigate during the missed approach procedure.
- 21: Forgetting to do the after take-off checks
- 22: Trying to fly an RNAV approach with VLOC displayed on the GPS.
- 23: Not pressing the OBS button after the go-around following an RNAV approach, so that no GPS guidance is available for the missed approach.
- 24: The list is not exhaustive!!

### **Appendix: Approach Charts**

**NOTE:** These charts may not be up to date – always use latest charts.







# **Part 5: Appendices**

**Appendix 1: Instructional Techniques** 

**Appendix 2: Long Briefings** 

Appendix 3 Pre-Flight Briefings (Short Briefs)

**Appendix 4: FIC Groundschool** 

**Appendix 5: Flight Training** 

<u>Appendix 6: Instructor Competencies</u>

Appendix 7: CAA Forms & Documents

Appendix 8: Blackbushe Aviation FI Course

Appendix 9: Pre-FI Course Assessment

Appendix 10: Typical Instructor Assessments of Competence

# **Appendix 1: Instructional Techniques**

# **Building Blocks**

Several exercises can be broken down into smaller parts that can be mastered individually before being added together to create the finished product. Examples would be:

Turning, Climbing, Descending: Entry. Maintaining. Rollout

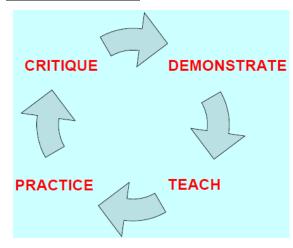
Forced Landings: Initial Actions. Troubleshooting. Field Selection. Mayday. Approach Planning etc

Circuits: Take-Off. Climb. Downwind. Base. Final. Go-Around etc

## **Known to Unknown**

There is a huge amount of material that the student must absorb in the process of flight training, so it always a good idea to start with something that they are familiar with. For example, before teaching levelling out from a climb, make sure they are happy maintaining a climb first. Then you can add-on the new skill to the old. Afterwards, you can go back and teach the entry.

# **Circle of Learning**



A continuous loop, whereby the student learns by

- Watching a demonstration of the manoeuvre by the instructor.
- The instructor teaches that manoeuvre by breaking it down and pattering it.
- The student practices the manoeuvre.
- The instructor offers feedback, which may entail another loop.

## **Following Through on the Controls**

In the early lessons, it can be beneficial for the student to place their hands and feet lightly on the controls while the instructor demonstrates a manoeuvre. This way they can gauge the amound and rate of input required before having a go for themselves. A similar method can be used by asking the student to place one finger on the throttle, for example during stall recovery demonstrations. Remember to tell the student to 'Relax' when you no longer need them to follow you through.

## **Work Cycles**

There are several useful work cycles in basic flight training that can make life easier for both student and instructor. Do not hesitate to keep repeating them whenever reinforcement is needed.

SELECT – HOLD – TRIM: Used when learning to trim the aircraft. It stops the student flying by trimwheel and makes

them look outside.

LOOKOUT – ATTITUDE – INSTRUMENTS: A very useful cycle used in Straight & Levl, Climbing, Descending and Turning. It forces the

attention outside, and reminds them to glance at their instruments.

## **Threat & Error Management (TEM)**

Examiners now want to see a thorough culture of TEM from all instructors and will expect frequent reference to be made to it. Not only should TEM be mentioned in ground briefings, but should then be referred to again in the air as relevant topics arise.

Make sure the student understands the diference between threats and errors: Threats are generally external to us and are present in our operating environment. Errors are usually internal to us – so human error and mistakes.

## **Threat Identification:**

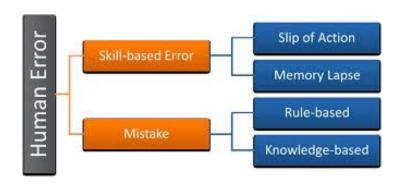
Try to elicit possible threats from the student either by asking open questions about the threats in the environment, or by guiding them with leading questions, or a model:



### **Identification of Errors:**

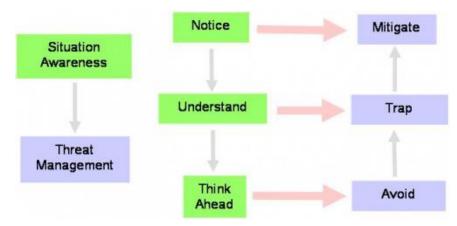
Depending on the experience of the student, it may be harder to identify errors. For example:

- Mis-set Altimeter or DI
- Airspace Infrincgement
- Forgetting to change fuel tanks
- Forgetting to carry out checks when required
- Forgetting to use Carb Heat on descent or forgetting to turn it off afterwards
- Joing for the wrong runway



## **Management:**

Then when it comes to management of these threats and errors, it is important to suggest solutions. It is not enough to simply identify errors – they must be managed: avoided, trapped or mitigated. Once mentioned, try to revist these threats and errors frequently throughout the brief and flight. TEM can thus permeate the whole instructional process rather than just be a monotonous list at the beginning of a pre-flight brief.



### **Negative Training:**

Avoid the use of negative training: Always tell the student what you want him to do, not what you DON'T want him to do. He may focus on these items instead of the primary task.

In the air, this can result in a poor instructional technique known as 'Instruction by Fault Analysis' where the instructor does not 'teach' the student what to do, he merely tells him that he is doing it incorrectly. This must be avoided at all costs.

Another example of negative training is flying around with the stall warner sounding during slow flight.

### **Debriefing:**

- Debriefing is a very important, and often underused, part of the teaching process. It is important to consolidate the lerning objectives from the lesson before the student goes home and forgets. Just 5 minutes of debrief time can be invaluable.
- Make sure the student writes something down during the debrief. A student listening to a long list of important points without a pen and paper is not going to improve.
- A facilatative approach to debriefing is often a good ide, especially with more advanced students. Questions like the following can prove enlightening: How did you feel that went? What could you have done differently? What were your best and poorest parts?
- Do not make a debrief a long, chronological list of student faults. Pick one or two good points, and a few negative points and debrief those.

# **Appendix 2: Long Briefings**

### Introduction

A detailed explanation and discussion conducted by a qualified flight instructor and covering the major considerations of an air exercise. The normal length should be approximately 40-50 minutes and it may be given either as a tutorial to an individual student or as an informal lecture to two or more students.

Long briefings are frequently given to students on bad weather days, and there is a requirement in every instructor AoC to deliver one:

#### From CAA Standards Doc 10:

### **The Lecture or Long Briefing**

- The instructor will be expected to give a long briefing or short lecture lasting approximately 30 to 40 minutes.
- The subject will be determined by the examiner and should be made known to the instructor not less than 2 days before the date of the assessment. Subject matter should be relevant and related to the appropriate instructional privileges and pilot training syllabus. Examiners should vary the subject matter so that it becomes a useful and challenging exercise for the instructor to research and prepare the lesson and not just repeat something that has been prepared and delivered as part of the course.
- Instructors should expect to give the long briefing or lecture to a small audience comprising the examiner and other student pilots or instructors. Instructors will be expected to demonstrate effective use of a variety of training aids and equipment. Therefore, prior preparation and practice with such equipment is essential.
- Sufficient time should be allowed at the end of the briefing or lecture for a reasonable number of questions from the audience. The examiner must ensure however, that this does not become a lengthy session or that the instructor is exposed to unreasonable questioning.

## **Typical Examiner Requested Long Briefs:**

- The ILS system.
- The VOR and its use.
- RNP Approaches.
- Pick any recent light aircraft accident that occurred in IMC and analyse using TEM.

### **Useful Tips:**

- Have a handout like the one below available to give to students either before of after the lesson. This will enable them to either follow you through as you give the lecture, or to consolidate with afterwards.
- Have printed pictures and illustrations available for students to look at. They will be drawn much more professionally that you can draw freehand on a whiteboard.
- Ask yourself the following questions: Why did you decide on that title? Why did you choose the illustrations you did? Why did you choose to present it in this way?
- During FIC training, it is a good idea to introduce each pre-flight briefing or lecture with a relevant accident. This will make it more real and give purpose to the exercise.

#### **Common Faults:**

- Avoid talking and writing on the white board at the same time with your back to the student(s).
- Make sure you use an aircraft model and keep it correctly oriented for the student's benefit.
- Make sure you include the student(s) in any briefing or lecture. Use eye contact and ask questions.

## **Example 1: IRI Long Briefing on Inadvertent flight into IMC**



# **Synopsis** G-CCPV

- Planned VFR flight entered cloud over high ground
- · Became disoriented
- Exited cloud and regained control
- Forecasts not observed



# Weather

- South-Westerly wind of 20kts
- · Good visibility
- · Overcast cloud at 3,500ft
- Highest elevation on route 1,053ft amsl
- Estimated 800ft between cloud and high ground when approaching
- Cloud suddenly descended?!?!



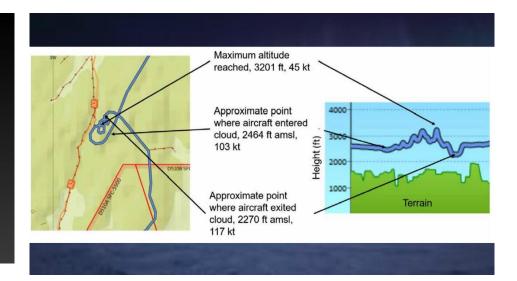
# Once in IMC

- Attempted to climb using full power
- · Became disoriented
- Felt he had stalled and lost control
- Three 360degree turns before emerging
- In cloud for 3-4 mins



# Once out of IMC

- · Pilot headed for only area clear of cloud
- · Inadvertently entered the Spadeadam danger area
- · Controller noticed and contacted pilot
- Controller told pilot lost control in IMC and coordinated with Spadeadam
- Pilot left danger area and intended to continue to Sleap?
- · Eventually diverted to Kirkbride



# What can we learn?

- · Weather briefings
- Inadvertent flight into IMC
- · Skill fade
- Importance of correct license with correct ratings
- · Aircraft requirements

# **Inadvertent flight into IMC**

- Proper planning should avoid this
- 14% of accidents are weather related
- · Weather category has largest number of fatal accidents
- More than half are attempts to continue VFR into IMC
- · Maintain control of the airplane
- Trust instruments not "seat of the pants"
- 180 degree turn
- Turn back!!!

# **Weather Briefing**

- Skyway code version 3
- Met form 215
- TAFs and METARs are reported as AAL
- Try to get an overall picture for the weather
- Minimums for VFR flight below 3,000ft is?
- Clear of cloud and in sight of the surface, 1,500m vis
- · Is it safe?
- Skyway code recommends >5km vis and >1,000ft cloud base (unless circuits)



# **Skill Fade**

- The decay of ability or adeptness over a period of non-use
- Reason for currency and recency requirements
- Just because you meet the legal requirement are YOU safe?
- Pilot of incident had done IMC training 20 years previously
- · Would have needed to simulate IMC with a safety pilot or an instructor in a different aircraft
- · Use it or lose it

# **Licenses and Ratings**

- · Pilot of Incident only held an LAPL
- · No instrument qualifications can be added to a LAPL
- Only a PPL holder can add Instrument ratings
- · Both IMC and IR ratings allow flight in IMC



# Aircraft requirements NCO.IDE.A.125

- · Aircraft must be IFR certified
- Magnetic heading time in hours, minutes and seconds pressure altitude indicated airspeed - vertical speed - turn and slip - attitude - stabilised heading - OAT
- · Indication when power to gyro instruments is not adequate
- Means of preventing malfunction of airspeed due to condensation or icing
- In terms of navigation, basically whatever you need to navigate safely, no specific requirements

# **Appendix 3: Pre-Flight Briefings (Short Briefings)**

## Introduction

The student has already either had a long brief on the subject, or self studied, so the purpose is not to teach the theory, but to provide a punchy overview of the entire flight that is about to take place, including pre-flight and post flight duties. It should leave the student in doubt about who will be doing what during the exercise.

In this regard, I am always reminded of the following limerick:

A gay man who lived in Khartoum,
Took a lesbian up to his room,
They argued a lot,
About who should do what,
And how, and with what, and to whom.

Although undoubtedly silly, it does get to the crux of the point of a short briefing! Note, not once do the participants use the word 'we'. 'How' is the most importand word of all.

The briefing normally includes a statement of the aim and brief allusion to principles of flight only if relevant. An explanation is to be given of the air exercises which are to be taught by the instructor and practised by the student during the flight. It should include how the flight will be conducted with regard to who is to fly the aeroplane and with what airmanship, weather and flight safety aspects which currently apply. The nature of the lesson will govern the order in which the constituent parts are to be taught.

The four basic components of the briefing will be:

- 1. The aim
- 2. Principles of flight (briefest reference only)
- 3. Threat & Error Management TEM.
- 4. The air exercise(s) what, and why and how and by whom.

## **Preparation**

Make sure everything you need to deliver the pre-flight brief is available. There is nothing worse than an instructor having to leave the room to look for models or other aids. Even if this means delaying the start of the briefing, get everything together and ready, including the notes you will be using during the briefing.

Before starting the briefing, write the first part of the briefing on the board. Leave marks and spacers where you will write the remaining text, otherwise crowding can occur.

Aim: To learn to turn, in level flight, at 30° angle of bank onto various headings. Airex: 1: Revision: 3: Entry 2: Maintaining 4: Rollout 5: 6:

Do this in silence. Remember, NEVER talk to the student(s) while your back is turned and you are writing.

For example in EX9.1 you could prepare this part and lead the students through what follows.

Writing in CAPITALS rather than cursive script can be more legible to a class, depending on how neat your writing is. But avoid too many capitals.

Do not under-estimate the effectiveness of underlining something.

Do not be afraid to use abbreviations on your board briefing, as long as they have been explained: eg: clb for climb, Att for Attitude etc. Little diagrams are helpful too such as a mini balance ball for balance, or pair of eyes ••• for lookout. This will make the board look more appealing than one covered with words.

Use colour consistently, with **RED** being used for importand things or danger.

# **Build Up The Brief**

From Exercise 6 onwards, it can be a good idea to address the question as to WHY we are doing each lesson, as it is not always obvious to the student. 'Why are we learning to fly S&L?' 'Because when we are flying somewhere far away, the majority of our flying will be S&L.'

Make sure the student knows what the difference between a threat and an error is. Then, elicit the threats and possible errors from the students that you want, by guiding your questions: eg: 'what possible threat could we have on a busy weekend in the local area?' or 'what possible errors could we make when using the altimeter?' Just asking 'what threats are there today' could create all sorts of answers, many of them not relevant to the direction you want to lead them. Then in the 'Management' row, add solutions to these threats and errors. It is not enough to simply identify errors – they must be managed: avoided, trapped or mitigated. Once mentioned, try to revist these threats and errors frequently throughout the brief and flight. TEM can thus permeate the whole instructional process rather than just be a monotonous list at the beginning of a pre-flight brief.

Outline how the flight will begin and who will do what to get the aircraft airborne. Use the words I and YOU (see below).

The use of colour on the board is important. Do not write everything in the same coulur. Have a system. Red is useful for important or dangerous things.

Then build up the rest of the board briefing by using building blocks. In this case begin with the 'Maintaining' building block. Then move onto the 'Entry' etc. Remember talk to the students, then turn and write in silence, then turn back and talk.

Remember to ask question regularly to prevent 'instructor drone-on'. An interactive and facilitative style is much preferable.

Talk about **HOW** things will be done, not just what will be done: 'I will enter the turn using co-ordinated input on the rudder and ailerons.'

Although it can be difficult at times, avoid the use of **WE** as much as possible. Use I and **YOU**. For example: 'I will fly the aircraft to the local area, where you will carry out a FREDA check. Then I will demonstrate how to carry out a HASELL check. You will then have a chance to practice.'

Make sure you use the word 'Teach' as appropriate. Many instructors say they will demonstrate a manoeuvre then the student will practice. There needs to be an element of teaching, after all, that is what an instructor does! Remember the Circle of Learning.

Avoid the use of negative training: Tell the student what you want him to do, not what you DON'T want him to do. He may focus on these items instead of the primary task.

## **Use of Visual Aids**

Try to incorporate models and visual aids as much as possible. Always use the airraft model for all pre-flight briefings, especially when under assessment.



When holding the aircraft model, always orient the model so that it appears the correct way round for the student rather than the instructor.

Which of these instructors has mastered the technique?

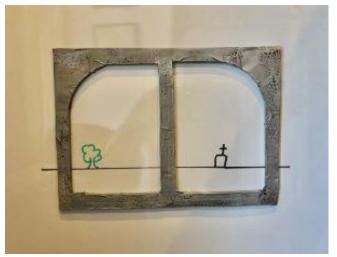


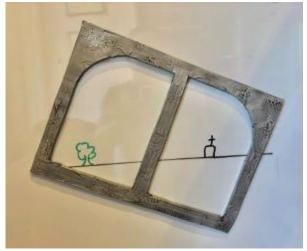
Actual aircraft instruments make very compelling teaching aids:



But having blown up diagrams of cut-away instruments allows you to explain their operation in more detail.

An aircraft window cutout can be used very effectively to show changing attitudes without having to redraw:







Straight & Level

Level turn to the right

Descending turn to the right

These can be made easily from cardboard, and if your whiteboard is magnetic, small magnets can be attached to the cutout to make it stay in place.

When showing changes in attitude using the cutout, be sure to exaggerate the changes to make them more visible to the student.

# **Appendix 4: FIC Groundschool**

# **Teaching & Learning**

There is a requirement for the trainee instructor to have a minimum of 25 hours of **Teaching & Learning** Groundschool. A suggested breakdown is as follows:

1. The Learning Process			
	Establish why the student wants to learn. It makes a huge difference to their performance if they actually want to		
Motivation for Learning	learn. Common motivations include:		
	Self-improvement, Career goal, Personal achievement, Financial reward, Desire to please family or employer.		
Learning is always easier if there is some reward at the end. Find out what the student is looking			
Incentives to Learning	Common incentives include:		
	Self-improvement, Career advancement, Personal improvement, Financial reward, Desire to please family.		
	Find out if there are any special needs.		
Obstacles to Learning	Medical, for example dyslexia is common in trainee pilots. Disability, airsickness, vertigo, phobias.		
· ·	Finance and time availability can also be huge obstacles.		
	Aptitude, or lack of aptitude can also be a considerable obstacle.		
	Remember, students need to be physically, mentally and emotionally ready to learn.		
	Everyone learns in a different way:		
	Some students are happy to self-study using on-line resources and books.		
Learning Methods	Some students will need more intensive one on one teaching.		
Learning Wearload	Most will be in the middle.		
	Some students like to understand everything and relish formulae. Others are happy to accept certain facts and		
	move on.		
	Some students need visual aids and lack the ability to create mental models easily. Others are good at this.		
Rates of Learning	Each student will have a natural pace of learning. Establish that pace early on and don't try to push them to		
	accelerate too much. This is easy for one on one learning, but in a group can cause problems.		
Perception &	Students will find different topics harder or easier than you did when you were learning. Remember everyone is		
Understanding	different and learns in their own way. It is your job to harness the student's ability.		
Memory and its	People remember things in different ways. You may need to use inventive methods to solidify a concept or		
Application	routine. Acronyms can be a good way. As can cockpit flows. Others prefer to count the number of actions.		
Habits & Transfer	Remember, the student will watch you like a hawk in the early days, so it is vital that you don't let them mimic		
	any bad habits that you may have. Strive to uphold the highest standards at all times.		

2. The Teaching Pro	cess		
	What makes a good teacher? Think of examples from your and their history. Why are some teachers better than others?		
	<b>Enthusiasm:</b> Keen to get on with the job and do it in a positive manner. Enthusiasm is contagious. On the other h		
	lack of enthusiasm will sow the seeds for similarly negative attitude in your students.		
	Patience: Many of your students will need to have procedures and techniques explained to them time and time again.		
	Even though you may feel that you are 'banging your head against a brick wall' you must remain patient. Patience		
	especially needed when dealing with inexperienced, forgetful or underconfident students.		
	Sincerity: Takes an interest in his student's progress both on the ground and in the air. Having an open and honest		
<b>Elements of Effective</b>	attitude with the student which will gain respect and confidence. Lies, half-truths and false write ups will undermine		
Teaching	trust, destroy the instructor/student relationship and obstruct the student's ability to learn.		
	Adaptability. An instructor must be adaptable or flexible as every student is different and requires a different approach.		
	Fairness: An instructor never shows favouritism - do not be over friendly with one student and distant with another.		
	Honesty: Instructors never bluff - if you need to discipline a student or threaten to take action, then do it. Do not make		
	threats that you have no intention of carrying out.		
	If an instructor does not know the answer to a question, then he says so.		
	An instructor admits to his own mistakes. He never blames others and to admit that 'you were right and I was wrong'		
	does much to improve the relationship with your student.		
	<b>Considered:</b> An instructor does not make quick 'on the spot' judgements. When assessing a flight, he should take some		
	time to think it over so that good points as well as bad points are considered. A balanced view will give an assessment		
	that is valid and reliable.		
	<b>Decisive:</b> They consider all the factors so that they make correct decisions and then act upon them.		
	Interested: A good instructor is interested in his students and lets them know this by taking an interest in their		
	backgrounds, problems, achievements and ambitions.		
	Motivating: Good teachers tend to be able to motivate well. So, the key to being an effective teacher, is often how to		
	motivate the student (see the Learning Process).		
Dia	It is important to have a well-structured plan for lessons and for the overall course. This takes time and will involve the		
Planning of	preparation of course content and teaching aids.		
Instructional Activity	Avoid having multiple sessions of the same kind of instruction - mix up between flights, lectures, practice sessions and		
Too shing Mother!	hands-on learning if possible.		
Teaching Methods	There are many ways to teach, just as there are many ways to learn. Which methods are used will in part be decided by		
Known to Unknown	the instructor, and in part by the needs of the student.		
	See Appendix 1: Instructional techniques  Pathor than make things up as you go along it is much better to have a lesson plan which will keep you on the correct		
Use of Lesson Plans	Rather than make things up as you go along, it is much better to have a lesson plan which will keep you on the correct		
	track. Use pre-prepared documents and teaching aids.		

3. Training Philosophies		
Value of a Structured (approved) Course of Training	A structured course of training is always better for everyone - The student knows what is coming next, and the instructor can use it to keep him on track.  If training at an ATO or DTO, there should already be an approved course of training for most courses. Outside such an establishment, the instructor needs to have a framework. Time should be taken to work out a syllabus that can be followed. Basic topics can then be expanded by group discussion or examples from real life instruction. A good FIC instructor will always have a good supply of stories to share.	
Importance of a Planned Syllabus	Flying training is a complex business, and the well-defined syllabus that has been developed over the years, helps everyone understand the path that needs to be followed.  Use either a commercially available course book, or devise one of your own and distribute it to the students beforehand.	
Integration of Theoretical Knowledge and Flight Instruction	There is no point trying to explain something in the air or in a short briefing if the student has not already studied that concept in greater detail. As such, it is important to make sure the theoretical knowledge and the air instruction are synchronised.  Find out if the student has done the required reading before the flight lesson. If not, it may be appropriate to cancel the flight and do ground school. This will ensure that next time he is better prepared.  It is important that the theoretical and practical sides of the training run roughly concurrently – If the student has already read a certain chapter of the book, it makes the lesson much more relevant.	
3a. Instructor Standards		
Appearance & Conduct	The instructor at all times must appear smart, well groomed and professional. A sloppy or dishevelled appearance is indicative of poor personal standards and attitude towards the job.	
Personal Habits	Personal habits, such as scratching, picking, mumbling etc detract from the student's experience and should be minimised where possible as they are distracting.	
Food & Cleanliness	An instructor should avoid eating smelly or gas-producing foods, such as garlic or beans, in the hours before instructing. Remember you will be sharing a very small space together!	
Personal Standards	The instructor should strive for the highest standard of tuition and aircraft operation throughout. He should keep himself up to date with the latest rules and regulations, as well as aircraft and flying school procedures.	
Professional Standards	All instructors at a school should be standardised – ie they should all teach in the same way. This allows them to share students easily. The method your ATO uses to teach each lesson will be in the relevant ATO manual. Most ATOs maintain standardisation by regular standards meetings where such matters are routinely discussed.	

4a. Techniques of App	olied Instruction - Theoretical Knowledge - Classroom instruction Techniques:
	There are a great many training aids that should be used to assist in instruction:
	Whiteboard, OHP, PowerPoint, Aircraft models, cockpit window cut-outs, real aircraft instruments, charts, computers etc. The
Use of Training Aids	importance of these visual aids cannot be overstated, and no pre-flight briefing should be given without the aircraft model being
	close at hand. Audio-visual presentations, such as short videos or photographs can make a theoretical knowledge lesson come
	alive.
	The CAA still value the ability of an instructor to deliver a briefing on a whiteboard.
Group Lectures	If there are several students at around the same stage in training, a group lecture can be a good way to reduce time for the
Group Lectures	instructor, but more importantly, the interaction between several students can generate positive learning benefits.
Individual Briefings	Sometimes, a one-on-one briefing can be more valuable, especially if the student has a special need or is struggling/racing
_	ahead.
Student	As with Group Lectures, above, student participation and discussion can be a very useful tool in learning. Observing students
Participation/Discussion	discussing a topic can tell the instructor the level of understanding that has been gained.
4b. Techniques of App	olied Instruction - In-Flight – Airborne Instruction Techniques:
	The cockpit environment in flight is alien to most students, and has a number of limitations when it comes to teaching and
	learning.
The Flight/Cockpit	The student will be under a workload – possibly overloaded, or may be anxious.
Environment	The side by side seating and lack of eye contact poses challenges, which need to be overcome.
	The lack of a 'pause button' means that the instructor cannot go into in-depth explanations during flight. This is best dealt with
	by making a note on the kneeboard for later discussion. But do not forget to return to the subject after the flight.
	Nothing in the airborne lesson should be new to the student. Everything should have been discussed on the ground in either the
Techniques of Applied	long briefing or the short briefing.
Instruction	Any airborne debriefing should always involve the instructor taking control first, to allow the student to concentrate fully. Some
	students feel that the instructor taking control is an admission of failure on their part. A good way to do this is to say 'I have
	control, just so I can explain this to you'.
4c. Techniques of App	<u>lied Instruction</u> Post-Flight:
	The importance of a good debrief cannot be overstated. An effective debrief cannot be conducted in the air, and it is vital that a
Debrief	debrief is carried out after flight to ensure the relevant messages are driven home. The debrief need not take very long, but it is
	a critical, and all too often forgotten part of the lesson. The debrief should include any notes you made during the flight for
	discussion later.
	Make sure the student takes notes during a debrief or the chances are, the information will be lost.
4d. Techniques of App	plied Instruction - In-Flight Judgment and Decision Making
	It is more or less impossible to teach judgement and decision making effectively in the classroom. The best way is to teach by
Judgment and Decision	example. Whenever opportunities arise during the flight (weather or technical situations), try to involve the student and allow
Making	them to see how decisions are made and solutions are found.
	This sets the seed for the teaching of CRM.

5a. Student Evaluating & Test	ing - Assessment of Student Performance:	
	Progress Tests are important to allow both the student and instructor to gauge the student's performance. As a	
The Function of Progress Tests	fundamental tenet of instruction is 'to take the student from where he is to where he needs to be', we need to know	
	where the student is in order to be able to do this effectively.	
	Progress tests can be written or practical.	
	The regular asking of questions during ground and flight instruction can give a good idea of the student's factual	
Recall of Knowledge	knowledge.	
	<b>The Law of Exercise.</b> This law states that things most often repeated are best remembered. Frequently asking your	
	student to give the answer to an important question will help him to remember it when needed. For example, every	
	time he lines up for take-off, ask him the demonstrated crosswind. Every time he starts the engine, ask the starter	
	duty cycle.	
Translation of Knowledge into	More probing questions will be needed to make sure the student's knowledge of facts has been fully understood.	
	Many students are good at remembering facts, but they need to be understood. For example – the student knows the	
Understanding	crosswind limit is 13 kts. But, when the tower gives the wind for take-off, fails to understand whether or not this limit	
	has been exceeded.	
	The most advanced form of learning allows the previously learned facts and their understanding to be translated into	
	actions. For example after a simulated cabin fire in flight, the student has learned that turning off the Battery Master	
Development of Understanding	Switch is an item on the checklist. He is able to recall and understand this fact. However, this fact in itself is only the	
into Actions	beginning. Once he has translated this knowledge into understanding, he should be able to realise that he has now	
	lost the use of the radio transponder, and any electrically operated flaps. The final stage is developing this	
	understanding into actions – the student then tells you he will have to join the airfield non-radio and perform a	
	flapless landing.	
The Need to Evaluate Rate of	Every student learns at their own rate, and this rate needs to be understood by both parties.	
Progress	Sometimes the rate may be so slow that a serious conversation is needed.	
	Sometimes, an enthusiastic student wants to race ahead. This also needs to be managed.	
5b. Student Evaluating & Test	ing - Analysis of Student Errors:	
	Students rarely make errors deliberately. There is always a reason why errors are made – it may be poor instructional	
Establish the Reason for Errors	technique or a failure to grasp a concept. The key to improving performance is identifying the reasons why an error is	
Establish the Reason for Errors	made. For example, on the ILS, the student always goes high on the glide slope at the FAF. The reason turned out to	
	be that he always selected flap at the FAF. Knowing the reason can help prevent its recurrence by forewarning.	
Tackle Major Faults First, Minor		
Faults Second	first and fix them before tackling the smaller ones.	
Avoidance of Over-Criticism	If too much criticism is levelled at the student, he may become despondent and this may result in demotivation. As	
	above, tackle the major problems first (or in isolation).	
The Need for Clear Concise	As in all elements of flight instruction, communication is the key. The student must always understand what is	
Communication	required of him, and how his performance fared.	

6. Training Programme Development		
Lesson Planning	Good lessons are not made up as the instructor goes along. They have well defined aims, well thought out	
	content, with various visual aids, and a summary at the end.	
Preparation	Spend time preparing the material, including any handouts or visual aids. Not only does it make your	
	teaching job easier, but the student feels that a more professional job is being done.	
<b>Explanation &amp; Demonstration</b>	Be ready to explain concepts in more than one way if a student struggles to grasp it the first time – just	
	because you understand that explanation, doesn't mean your student will.	
Student Participation & Practice	Asking of questions and practical exercises will allow you to ascertain if the student understands. Less	
	outgoing students may just nod rather than admit they don't understand something.	
Evaluation	Make sure you (and your student) are happy with the student's progress before moving on to the next	
	subject.	

7. Human Performance and Limitations Relevant to Flight Instruction		
Physiological Factors	A student who is tired, hung-over or airsick will not be in a good place to learn.	
	Get the student used to assessing his own condition before deciding to fly.	
<b>Human Information Processing</b>	Make sure the student does not become overloaded during lessons. Often, the instructor will want to move	
	on to the next part before the student has fully assimilated the previous section. This is counter-productive.	
Behavioural Attitudes	Monitor student attitude and behaviour to see if any negative trends are developing. If they are, address	
	them early on so that there is time to change.	
Development of Judgment &	While training your student, if decisions have to be made, involve the student – that is how he will learn to	
Decision Making	make decisions himself. Explain to him why you made the decisions you did. This is how CRM is best taught.	

8. Hazards Involved in Simulating Systems Failures and Malfunctions in the Aeroplane During Flight			
Selection of a Safe Altitude	Have minimum altitudes for hazardous activities such as stalling, spinning, engine shutdowns, EFATO etc.		
	They may be set by the training establishment, or you may need to set your own. Never be tempted to go		
	below them as this sends the wrong message to the student.		
Importance of 'touch drills'	Make it clear to the student whether the failure and subsequent drills will be real or touch drills only.		
	Certain items can still be moved during touch drills – throttle, fuel pump etc.		
	Introduce the term 'Situational Awareness' and stress that it applies to Geographical environment as well as		
Situational Awareness	checklist status and aircraft operational state.		
	Consider such tools as 'Plane-Path-People' to help develop awareness.		
Adherence to Correct Procedures	Always use the correct procedures, and do not hesitate to refer to the appropriate checklist in flight. This		
	sends the message to the student that it is ok to do this himself.		

9. Training Administration				
	Flight/Theoretical Knowledge Instruction Records: The importance of the instructor making such student records as soon as			
	possible after the event.			
	Log books: The need to keep both instructor and student log books up to date.			
General:	Flight/Ground Curriculum: The instructor should know the curriculum and know where to find the details.			
Concran	Study Material: The importance of knowing what material is available for instruction and study.			
	Official Forms: The instructor should have a goo	od knowledge of the required CAA and ATO/DTO forms.		
	AFM/PoH: The instructor should be familiar wit	h these publications and encourage the student to study them.		
	Flight Authorisation: The instructor and the students	dent should both be familiar with flight authorisation procedures. The student should		
	be encouraged to take responsibility for this.			
	Aircraft Documents: The instructor should be familiar with these documents and encourage the student to study them.			
	<u>Licence &amp; Rating Requirements</u> : Both instructor and student should understand the privileges and limitations of their licencing			
	documents.			
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<u>Training standards:</u> A high level of personal standards should be maintained by the instructor.		
	Standardisation: A high level of commonality w			
	<u>Preparation for Skill Tests/Proficiency Checks:</u> Although not primarily there to teach the student to pass the test, the instructor			
The IRI(A)'s		e relevant test the student is being prepared for.		
Responsibilities:	Training Effectiveness: The instructor must consider how attective his instruction is and it necessary seek to			
	Examination & Fault Analysis: The instructor must be effective at analyzing student faults before he can correct them.			
	<b>Development of Student Responsibilities</b> : The instructor must strive to encourage the student to take responsibility from an early			
	stage of training – PPR, walkarounds etc. Not only does this reduce workload on the instructor, but it makes the student feel			
	empowered.			
	Instructor Continuity Training: The instructor role is continually changing and both theoretical and flying skills need to be kept u			
	date.			
	Introduction			
FCL IRI(A):	General Information	The instructor must have a good working knowledge of all of these pieces of		
	Privileges	legislation, and keep up to date with them as they change.		
	Experience Requirements			
	Skill Tests & Proficiency Checks			
	Revalidation/Renewal of Ratings			

# **Appendix 5: Flight Training**

## 1: General Considerations:

During FIC training, the trainee instructor may never have done 2 things that will be asked of him:

- Fly from the right hand seat. He may be particularly anxious about landing from the unfamiliar seat. Make sure he is able to land satisfactorily from the other seat before sending 2 trainees off together on a mutual. There are other difficulties in operating from the other seat, such as parallax errors. For example, if the student in the LHS sets 2300 rpm, it may look like 2200 rpm when viewed from the RHS. The trainee instructor must get used to this and take this into account. Similarly with other instruments.
- Spinning. The fact that many trainee instructors have never done spinning before, may mean a few extra hours are needed to train this thoroughly.

## 2: Give and Give-Back:

The in-flight section of the FI course follows a very specific format. It involves the FIC instructor giving the lesson to the trainee instructor as though he were a PPL student. This is done in real time and will involve the trainee instructor practicing what he has been shown.

Once this is complete, the FIC instructor will ask the trainee instructor to give the lesson back to him, he now assuming the role of the PPL student. This 'give back' should again occur in real time, and the FIC instructor may make typical student errors when invited to practice. Afterwards, feedback may be offered to the trainee instructor which may involve a repeat of the give and give back.

Once this, initially odd, procedure has been learnt, it is repeated for all the exercises in the syllabus and soon becomes second nature.

Some FIC instructors give the whole lesson in one go, and then expect the 'give back' in one go also. However, a better, and more practical method is to break down the lesson into bite-sized chunks. An example for Ex10a(i) follows:

'Text in blue' indicates the FIC instructor talking to the supposed PPL Student. 'Text in green' indicates the FIC instructor talking to the Trainee Instructor.

- 1. The FIC instructor starts by demonstrating only, with no follow through, of the approach to a clean stall including HASELL Checks. 'I have control. I am now going to demonstrate the full stall and standard stall recovery. I just want you to watch what happens we will break it down later'. He carries out a HASELL check and demonstrate in silence a full clean stall with SSR. 'So, by the end of this lesson, you should be able to do that.' 'Now, I'd like you to give that back to me.' The trainee instructor now repeats that chunk of the lesson.
- 2. 'I have control. We are now in the local area and ready to start the exercise. Remind me what we must always do before practicing a stall.' 'That's right a HASELL check. So our Height is 3000', which is sufficient to recover by 2000' agl. Airframe: We are clean, which is what we want for this stall. Security: I am secure, are you? No loose articles in the aircraft. Engine: Ts & Ps are checked OK, and I will put the Carb Heat on for 10 seconds. Location: We are not above any Airfields, Built-Up areas, Controlled Airspace or Cloud, or Danger Areas. Now the Lookout. I will do a 90 degree turn to the left followed by one to the right. Give me a hand looking for other traffic, please.'

'OK, so we are now ready to start the approach to the stall. No need to follow me through, just watch my demonstration. So, I begin by putting on the Carb Heat to protect the engine. I close the throttle, keeping the aircraft straight with rudder. I am preventing the nose from dropping by holding the back pressure. I am trimming some of it off. Still holding the back pressure.' You may wish to leave some power on to prolong the deceleration and allow you to better point out the signs. 'Notice the high nose attitude. I can remove this symptom of the stall by simply moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I don't do that – I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the reduced airspeed. Again, I can remove this symptom of the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the sloppy controls – have a feel. Again, I can remove this symptom of the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the stall warner sounding. Again, I can remove this symptom of the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. At any time that any of these symptoms of an approaching stall occur, I can remove them by just moving the control column centrally forwards.' At this point, move the control column centrally forwards to remove all signs of the approaching stall.

- 3. Recover the aircraft to 3000' again. 'Now I'd like you to have a go at carrying out a HASELL check and setting the aircraft up for the approach to the stall. I want you to note each symptom and when you have seen all the symptoms, remove them by moving the control column centrally forwards. You have control.' The trainee instructor now practices this as though he were a PPL student.
- 4. 'I now want you to give me that section back.'' The trainee instructor now gives this section of the lesson back to the FIC instructor. When it is the FICI's turn to practice, he may make a mistake or two, such as forgetting to carry out a HASELL check. This should be addressed by the trainee instructor. The FICI will then offer feedback. Then the next section.

**NOTE:** This can get a little confusing at times. The trainee instructor can lose track as to which role he is supposed to be playing. One way of making this easier is to assign a name to the supposed PPL student. For example, if the trainee instructor's name is Mark, he may choose David as his PPL student name. The FIC instructor's name may be Steve, but chooses Jimmy when he is a supposed PPL student. This way, when the FIC instructor says 'OK, David, I want you to show me a stall', the trainee instructor immediately knows which role to assume.

See the previous lesion section using this method:

- 1. Steve starts by demonstrating only, with no follow through, of the approach to a clean stall including HASELL Checks. 'OK, David, I have control. I am now going to demonstrate the full stall and standard stall recovery. I just want you to watch what happens we will break it down later'. He carries out a HASELL check and demonstrate in silence a full clean stall with SSR. 'So, David, by the end of this lesson, you should be able to do that.' 'Now, Mark, I'd like you to give that back to me.' Mark now repeats that chunk of the lesson. 'OK, Jimmy, I have control. I am now going to demonstrate the full stall and standard stall recovery. I just want you to watch what happens we will break it down later'. He carries out a HASELL check and demonstrate in silence a full clean stall with SSR. 'So, Jimmy, by the end of this lesson, you should be able to do that.'
- 2. 'I have control. We are now in the local area and ready to start the exercise. David, remind me what we must always do before practicing a stall.' 'That's right a HASELL check. So our Height is 3000', which is sufficient to recover by 2000' agl. Airframe: We are clean, which is what we want for this stall. Security: I am secure, are you? No loose articles in the aircraft. Engine: Ts & Ps are checked OK, and I will put the Carb

Heat on for 10 seconds. Location: We are not above any Airfields, Built-Up areas, Controlled Airspace or Cloud, or Danger Areas. Now the Lookout. I will do a 90 degree turn to the left followed by one to the right. Give me a hand looking for other traffic, please David.'

'OK, so we are now ready to start the approach to the stall. No need to follow me through, just watch my demonstration. So, I begin by putting on the Carb Heat to protect the engine. I close the throttle, keeping the aircraft straight with rudder. I am preventing the nose from dropping by holding the back pressure. I am trimming some of it off. Still holding the back pressure.' You may wish to leave some power on to prolong the deceleration and allow you to better point out the signs. 'Notice the high nose attitude. I can remove this symptom of the stall by simply moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I don't do that – I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the reduced airspeed. Again, I can remove this symptom of the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. But let's say I keep holding the nose up. The next thing I notice is the stall warner sounding. Again, I can remove this symptom of the stall by moving the control column centrally forwards – see. At any time that any of these symptoms of an approaching stall occur, I can remove them by just moving the control column centrally forwards.' At this point, move the control column centrally forwards to remove all signs of the approaching stall.

- 3. Recover the aircraft to 3000' again. 'Now, David, I'd like you to have a go at carrying out a HASELL check and setting the aircraft up for the approach to the stall. I want you to note each symptom and when you have seen all the symptoms, remove them by moving the control column centrally forwards. You have control.' David now practices this.
- 4. 'OK, Mark, I now want you to give me that section back." Mark now gives this section of the lesson back to Steve. When it is Jimmy's turn to practice, he may make a mistake or two, such as forgetting to carry out a HASELL check. This should be addressed by Mark. Steve will then offer feedback. Then the next section.

## 3: Simulated Emergencies:

During FIC training as well as all other forms of flight training, there is a need to simulate emergencies. It is important that these 'simulated' emergencies are managed carefully so that they do not in themselves become real emergencies.

## **Types of Emergency:**

There are two basic types of simulated emergency:

- Life-threatening emergencies such as engine fire, engine failure, pilot incapacitation.
- Non-Life-threatening emergencies such as radio failure, electrical failure, getting lost.

## **Simulated Engine Failures:**

There are 2 ways the instructor can simulate an engine failure:

- Closing the throttle ideal for an engine failure after take-off (EFATO), but not the best way in cruise flight.
- **Building a Scenario** Far better and more realistic for engine problems in the cruise. A problem can be built up in a more realistic way by the instructor pointing out things that are not normal. For example, starting with a high oil temperature, then a strange vibration, then possibly some smoke or fumes from the engine. This may encourage the student to run the engine at lower power and carry out some diagnosis (which may fix the problem) before rushing in to the full engine failure drills. There is no time for this method during an EFATO.

During the course of the ensuing practice engine failure in single-engined aircraft, the instructor is effectively also acting as a safety pilot. In a real engine failure, the student would not be expected to 'warm the engine' periodically. If they choose to do so then that is ok, otherwise the instructor must do so since he has a 'duty of care' to the aeroplane. This is no negative reflection on the student. In a similar manner, the instructor is responsible for making sure the carb heat is on, low flying rule adherence and calling the go-around.

Simulated engine failures of single-engined aircraft may also be practiced in the circuit, but be careful not to inconvenience other airfield users.

### **Simulated Engine Failures (Multi-Engines Aeroplanes):**

Practice EFATOs on multi-engined aircraft should always be carried out at a suitable height. Each ATO will specify a minimum height, but 500' is typical. Remember, if the student puts the full 'wrong' rudder in, would you be able to recover from the height at which you gave the failure? At some airfields, due to noise abatement restrictions, this may mean that a practice EFATO will occur on the crosswind leg rather than climbout. After completing an asymmetric/OEI circuit to land, a full stop landing should always be made rather than a touch and go. This is in case the simulated failed engine is slow to respond when power is added for take-off. If further training is required, vacate the runway and taxi back to the holding point.

### **Touch Drills:**

The student should know what touch drills are – just touching the control and saying what you would do with that control works well. It is important that the student not only touches the correct control, but also says the correct thing. For example, a student, in the feather drill in a multi-engined aeroplane may touch the left propeller control and say 'feather right'. Obviously, this is not acceptable. Neither is just touching it, or touching it and saying left. He needs to unequivocally touch the left prop control and say 'feather left'.

Some controls in some drills can actually be moved by the student: Throttle, fuel pump, carb heat, flaps etc. This should be encouraged. Imagine in an engine fire scenario if the throttle wasn't retarded.

## **Circuit Breakers**

The instructor should not deliberately and secretly pull circuit breakers (CBs) in order to simulate a failure. It may be that that service cannot be restored.

## **Simulated Fires:**

Many skill tests require a simulated fire to be dealt with. This can also be built up using a scenario. The instructor could start coughing, then point out a faint smokiness in the cabin. Then, slowly report worsening symptoms until the student responds by actioning the appropriate checklist.

## **Simulated Distress Calls:**

Instructors should be encouraged to train students to make Practice PAN calls and training fixes during their training. Remember, a practice PAN can be made on any frequency, including a tower or AFIS frequency.

## **Intervention**

It is very important to know when and how to intervene during flight training. Several accidents have occurred as a result of the instructor failing to intervene in a timely manner.

If the instructor intervenes too soon, the student misses a valuable learning point, and begins to rely on the instructor to get him out of trouble. If the instructor leaves it too late, then there is a possible safety problem.

There is also the question of how the intervention is done. There are 4 main levels of intervention, that can be summarised as shown:

## 1: Hint & Tip

If time is not too critical, a timely hint or tip can achieve the desired result. For example, when a student is low on the approach, a comment such as 'How do you think the vertical profile is looking?' might be enough for them to have a think about the situation. Similarly, on base leg, with a strong tailwind that has gone unnoticed: 'What do you think the wind is up here?'

## 2: Tell me what's wrong

If hinting and tipping haven't worked, a more direct approach may be needed. For the student low on approach: 'We're a bit low'. This still gives the student a chance to consider the problem and work out how to resolve it.

#### 3: Tell me how to fix it

If pointing out the problem doesn't work, it may be that the student cannot think how to resolve the problem. They may need you to say something like 'add more power now' or 'raise the nose now'.

## 4: Fix it for me.

The last level occurs when all other avenues have been exhausted. You will need to say 'I have control' and fix the problem.

# **Appendix 6a: Trainee Needs**

It is important when training a student that their needs are covered. Not every student is the same and they each have differing needs. These needs can be summarised as follows:

- Start from where I am.
- Let me know where I am going.
- Give me a reason to want to get there.
- Let me know how I am doing.
- Use MY experience.
- Progress at MY pace.
- Let me make the knowledge and skill my own.
- I acknowledge responsibility for my own learning.

# **Appendix 6b: Instructor Competencies**

According to CAA Standards Document 10: All instructors shall be trained to achieve the following competences:



These will de dealt with in turn:

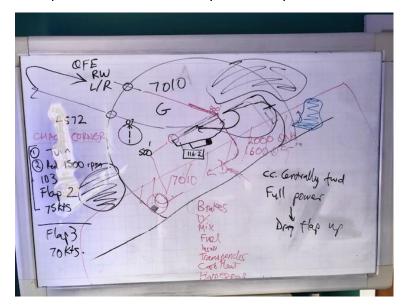
## **Prepare Resources**

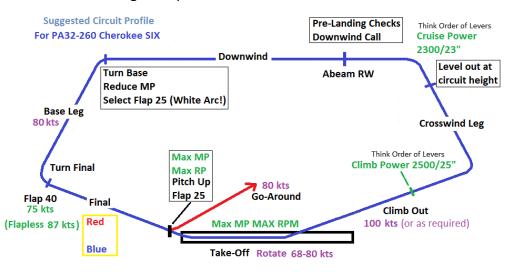
A lesson, be it ground or in the air requires considerable preparation on the part of the instructor. It will require:

- A Framework: The lesson should be structured in order to keep it concise and on track. This will usually begin with an aim, and then continue into the body of the lesson. At the end there should be a summary and time for questions.
- **Teaching Aids:** On the ground, these might include an airc4aft model, a white board and pens, aircraft instruments, video clips etc. There use should be integrated into the lesson. In the air, such items as IMC goggles, instrument covers, maps etc should all be ave to the instructed as and when needed. It does not inspire the student with confidence if the instructor cannot find or has forgotten to bring these items along.

• **Course Books:** It may be appropriate for the student to have been recommended or given a book, or other prepared documents (such as checklists or flight profiles) to guide them through a coure or lesson.

It is important to make sure any resiurces you use are effective. Consider the following example.





Which of these 2 teaching aids would you use?!

# **Create a Climate Conducive to Learning**

The learning environment is very important. This has several aspects:

- **Instructor Manner:** The instructor must be patient, approachable and unhurried in his behaviour. Many instructors allow insufficient time for lessons or briefings, and the result comes across negatively to the student who feels they are under pressure to learn and understand quickly. The general nature of the instructor here is also importance appearance, professionalism and sense of humour are important.
- **Physical Climate:** The place where teaching is to take place (classroom, aeroplane or simulator) must be suitable in terms of temperature, light and other facilities needed. Briefing or teaching should never take place at a table in a crowded café.

## **Present Knowledge**

It sounds obvious, but learning is much about the transfer of knowledge (and skill) from instructor to student. It is important that this transfer happens.

# **Integrate TEM & CRM**

• **TEM:** It is a CAA requirement now to integrate Threat and Error Management into all aspects of aviation instruction. This begins in the classroom, and pre-flight briefings should already contain this element. One way to introduce this is to colour code as follows:

Aim: To learn how to safely perform one engine inoperative turns, descents & climbs.

**Threats:** Other aircraft, Terrain, Engine overheat.

**Errors:** Loss of control, Infringement, fuel mismanagement

**Management:** Lookout, Speed & bank angle awareness, Checklist discipline, Pre-flight planning, Altimeter checks.

In this way, once the aim of the lesson has been established, there can follow a discussion about what the possible threats and errors are associated with that exercise. This then allows another discussion on how to manage those threats. It is not sufficient to just list the threats and then not continue to the management phase. Later in the flight, these threats, errors and management techniques should be pointed out as they occur to underline their importance.

• **CRM:** Crew Resource Management should be encouraged at all times, but it is particularly important in the aeroplane. The use of interactive briefings, verbalization and open questions will help guide the student in this matter. CRM is something that is best led by example. As an instructor, always try to display high levels of CRM at all times. Explain why you make the decision you did.

# **Manage time to achieve Training Objectives**

During the lesson, there is usually only a limited time available. This may be due to aircraft or instructor availability, airport operating hours etc. It is important that the time available is used to best manage the training requirements. If a student needs more practice, it may become necessary to drop a later exercise in order to properly practice the troublesome section.

# **Facilitate Learning**

Not all students learn in the same way. Some grasp ideas quickly, others need more time. Some students are very 'visual' and rapidly understand concepts when diagrams are used. Sime like mathematical formulae – others don't! It is your job as an instructor to find a way to make that student learn as best he can.

### **Assess Trainee Performance**

Obviously, the student's performance must be continually assessed in order to ensure that progress is being made. This assessment is important to the student, the instructor and the training establishment. This is done partly in the post flight debrief, but should also be recorded in student records. Traditionally, such records were handwritten, but increasingly, ATOs are using on-line training records. Such records should also be available to the student.

Report writing is an integral part of any instructor's daily activity. It is a skill that may require development. This section offers suggestions for use by instructors as guidance material to produce accurate reports.

All reports must reflect the debrief. Instructors should avoid writing comments that have not been discussed during the debrief.

An accurately written report can serve the following purposes:

- As a written hand-over to the next instructor
- To provide the trainee with an overview of how the training is progressing
- To provide the trainee with tips for improvement
- To allow the HoT to analyse progress or areas for development
- To allow the HoT to deal with poor performance in a structured and fair manner

Use CAP (Commentary, Appraisal, Pointers):



### Commentary

Detail how much of the lesson has been completed and to what overall standard has been achieved. Phrases to describe the standard might include; "to standard, below standard, good standard, very good standard and excellent standard".

# **Appraisal**

Write a phrase or phrases to discuss where the student is in more detail. For example; "X continues to overbank in turns, 30 degrees AoB as a maximum! S&L flight is improving now that X trims effectively. Checklist usage needs further study though.

#### **Pointers**

List a couple of Main Points and a couple of Minor Points for improvement going forward. The Main Points would have formed the main part of the debrief. The exact number of Pointers is unimportant but would probably be between 1 and 4. Pointers can of course be positive! Ensure that remedies are offered where possible.

## **Signing Off the Report**

Instructors should remember that student confidence is vital. Positive reinforcement is more powerful and aim to leave them with a word of encouragement. For example: "X is a pleasure to teach, keep up the hard work"

Comments:

Set course overhead. Nav to Chinnor - Abingdon Diversion to Newbury. Diversion to EGLK Very well flown. Do not check instruments on taxi when in close proximity to other a/c. Headings accurately flown. Diversions well flown. Do not change heading or alt without explanation. Go-around due RW blocked. Good decision and well handled. Navigation coming along very nicely.

Recommendations: More navigation practice

Giving positive feedback is a task most instructors enjoy. However, it is equally important to deliver negative feedback too. Negative feedback can be hard to handle and, when poorly delivered, unhelpful. We have all been on the receiving end of criticism - it is neither easy to give nor take. And yet, if appropriate, timely, and well wrapped, feedback can be a positive experience. While negative feedback might suggest a focus on the worst, it creates an immense opportunity for improvement when viewed in the right light. After all, an insightful critique provides a chance to grow and excel.

There are several points to think about before giving a student feedback:

- Harsh feedback may be counterproductive. Deliver feedback carefully and respectfully. If given too frequently and without regard to feeling, the student may revert to defense mode – possibly losing confidence, self-esteem, and motivation.
- Feedback isn't always negative. Don't persistently focus on what isn't working or isn't being done right. Attending to what is going well can support a student's growth and steer their development in the right direction.
- Feedback isn't always positive. On the other hand, don't always focus on strengths. If you only address the positives, the student will return to what they were doing, believing they have nothing to improve. Nevertheless, they will be delighted as they appear to be doing almost everything right. The balance between the points above is essential.
- Providing a fix may not be the answer. Ask facilitative questions that encourage reflection. Such open support can lead the student to understand what they did well, or poorly.
- Avoid wrapping negative feedback in praise. The feedback sandwich (there are more colloquial names for it), while popular, may not always be appropriate. The standard compliment/critique/compliment can give a false view of how someone is performing. Two positives outweigh one negative and, therefore, might suggest successful performance.
- Constructive criticism. Identifying the problem, then coming up with a plan to fix it is a powerful development tool. Help the student find ways to avoid making the same mistake while learning a new skill.
- Be honest and sincere. Students are often aware of their underperformance, so the feedback should not be a surprise. Make it clear you are keen to help them improve, rather than find fault.

- Be direct and clear. At the end of the feedback, don't let the student walk out of the room thinking 'what just happened?' State the feedback clearly and directly, without being rude or uncaring.
- Be specific. Don't overgeneralize or drift into other issues. Focus on the point(s) of feedback.
- Don't become personal. Do not confuse the person with their actions. Being personal may lead the student to shut down. They will be less likely to act on, or learn from, the points shared.
- Be consistent. Depending on the feedback frequency, the student shouldn't be surprised by what you have to say. Regular interaction can help avoid lengthy, negative, and unexpected feedback.
- Keep feedback fresh. Avoid a long gap between the lesson and providing feedback. The discussion should be current so that no one is trying to remember what happened.
- Always provide feedback in private, rather than in a public area.
- Always make a note of the feedback given so that any trends can be identified early.

# **Monitor and Review Progress**

In much the same way as assessing trainee performance (above), the instructor should conduct a longer-term review of the student's progress to check for any undesirable trends. These should be communicated to the student as soon as possible.

# **Evaluate Training Sessions**

It is important to find out if the training has been successful as soon as possible afterwards, or even during the training. Ask questions to find out if the lesson objectives and aims have been met.

# **Report Outcome**

Make it clear to the student whether or not they have met the aims and objectives of the lesson using the same techniques as for feedback.

# Appendix 7: CAA Forms & Documents (Click to visit)

Example forms are shown on the following pages, with guidance notes. Visit links for latest versions

**SRG 5018:** Course Completion Certificate for an Instructor Course

SRG 2159: On-line Form for Application, the issue, renewal, revalidation or variation of an instructor certificate.

**SRG 1169:** Examiner's Record - FI(R)/FI/CRI/IRI/FIC Authorisation Test/Check

Other Useful Documents

**CAA Standards Document 10: Assessment of Competence for Instructor Certification** 

CAP 804: Flight Crew Licensing - For Guidance Only

Full List of CAA Forms (Click to visit)

# **SRG 5018: Course Completion Certificate for an Instructor Course**

CAA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certificate in Accordance with Part-FCL This form is intended for use in the provision of evidence in support of an application made to the CAA using the CAA's online application service. Once completed the form should be scanned or photographed and uploaded by the applicant as part of an online application to the CAA. FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT It is an offence under the UK Air Navigation Order to make, with intent to deceive, any false representation for the purpose of procuring the grant, issue, renewal or variation of any certificate, licence, approval, permission, or other document. This offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine and on conviction on indictment **GUIDANCE NOTES GUIDANCE NOTE 1: Authorised signatories** An authorised signatory acts as a representative of the Head of Training, authorised by the Head of Training or through approved procedures to confirm that the state training has been conducted by the Approved Training Organisation (ATO). The ATO must maintain a record of those so auth GUIDANCE NOTE 2: Which sections of the course completion to complete You are only required to complete and print the sections relevant to your application Application applied for Sections to be fully completed FI initial issue FI/CRI/IRI variation FI - 1, 6(i) or 6(ii) / CRI - 1, 6(vi) / IRI - 1, 6 (vii) FI/CRI/IRI renewal or revalidation 1, 5(v), 5(vi) CRI/IRI/FTI initial issue 1, 2, 5(i), 5(ii), 5(iii), 5(iv) MCCI initial issue or renewal 1, 4, 7 MCCI revalidation 1, 7 MCCI variation 1, 6(v), 7 FTI revalidation 1, 5(v) FTI renewal 1, 5(v) Mountain rating instructor initial issue 1, 2, 3, 5 TRI / SFI / STI initial issue 1, 2, 5 TRI / SFI renewal 1, 2, 5 TRI / SFI revalidation 1, 5 TRI / SFI variation 1, 2, 6 STI renewal 1.5 1. APPLICANT DETAILS To be completed by the Training Provider This application is for (please select all that apply): Initial issue Renewal Revalidation Variation 2. PRE-REQUISITES To be completed by the Training Provider I certify that (name) .... has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they have met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (please provide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation): **Training Provider Details:** Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): . ATO number (if applicable): Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable) Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):

	g Provider Details:	
		ATO number (if applicable) :
Name o	of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
Signatu	re of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
5. TRAI	NING COURSE DETAILS	To be completed by the Training Provider
5)i) The	eoretical knowledge	To be completed by the Training Provider
	hours of theoretical knowledge (TK) instruction	
	olicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one): Full TK	
The ap	plicant has completed reduced course of TK training on t	the basis of: (if applicable)
	aching and learning	To be completed by the Training Provid
	hours of teaching and learning completed	
	olicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full tea	
The ap	plicant has completed a reduced course of teaching and	l learning in accordance with FCL.915(c)(1) on the basis of: (if applicable)
:\!!!\ Te	chnical training (IRI, CRI initial issue)	To be completed by the Training Provice
	plicant has satisfactorily completed	
_	ght training	To be completed by the Training Providence
	•	ourse of training in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
i)	FI(A) FI(H) FI(AS)	FCL.900C FI(A) FCL.900C FI(H)
ii)	Class Rating Instructor CRI SE	ME NEEDSGET (IV)
iii)	Instrument Rating Instructor IRI(A)	IRI (AS)
,		
iv)	Flight Test Instructor	
v)	Mountain Rating Instructor (FCL.930.MI(a))	
vi)	Type Rating Instructor TRI(A) (Please specify type):	
vii)		
viii)		
ix)	Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.	
x)	Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):	
xi)	Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA)	(MPA) (H) (PL)
xii)	Synthetic Training Instructor STI A	# <u> </u>
	start date:	rse end date:
ourse		flight training Reduced flight training Not applicable
	plicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full fl	
he app	olicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) — Full fi olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training	g on the basis of: (if applicable)
he app		3 on the basis of: (if applicable)
he app		g on the basis of: (if applicable)
The app	plicant has completed a reduced course of flight training	
he app	olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training a reduced course of flight training trace of flight instructions of flight instruc	uction of whichhours instrument ground time in a FTD 2/3 or FNPT I or FNPT II/III or FFS.
he application in the course of the course o	olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training irrse consisted ofhours of flight instruce entification number of simulator used (which must be is	
he app he app he cou STD id	olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training irse consisted ofhours of flight instruce entification number of simulator used (which must be is tent Authority issuing qualification certificate for the sim	nction of whichhours instrument ground time in a FTD 2/3 or FNPT I or FNPT II/III or FFS. ssued in accordance with UK Regulation No. 1778/2011)
he app he cou STD id Compe	olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training irrse consisted ofhours of flight instruce entification number of simulator used (which must be is	sction of whichhours instrument ground time in a FTD 2/3 or FNPT I or FNPT II/III or FFS. ssued in accordance with UK Regulation No. 1778/2011) mulator:
he application in the court of	olicant has completed a reduced course of flight training irse consisted of	sction of which

Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:

Name of FI/MI who conducted the flight test: .... Instructor reference number: .

Signature of Instructor:

3. Flight or Mountain Rating Instructor (FI/MI) Pre-Entry Flight Test

I confirm the pilot has satisfactorily completed a pre-entry flight test on (date): I recommended the pilot for the specified course (select one): Flight Instructor (FI) Date:

Mountain Rating Instructor (MI)

Competent authority issuing certificate:

To be completed by the Instructor

4. MCCI Course Instructor (if applicable)

To be completed by the Training Provide

5)v) Instructor refresher training course	To be completed by the Training Provider
I confirm the pilot has satisfactorily completed the instructor refresher training course on	(date).
For the revalidation or renewal of an instructor Certificate in accordance with Part-	
Training Provider Details	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO): (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
Signature (Head of Training):	Date:
5)vi) Instructor revalidation/renewal information	To be completed by the Examiner
I can confirm that the pilot has met the requirements of Part-FCL for the revalidation/renewal of the fe	ollowing Instructor:
FI(A) FI(H) FI(As) CRI IRI SFI STI	TRI MCCI MI
The Certificate of Revalidation has been signed and the rating/certificate is valid until (date)	
Examiner's Name:	Examiner's Number:
Competent Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	
Signature (Examiner):	Date:
6. Training Course/Information Details	To be completed by the Training Provider
6)i) Flight instructor variation (course)	
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation hours requirement(s) in accordance with Par	t-FCL for the following:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	•
FCL.905.FI(h) IR FCL.905.FI(i) SPA ME	
Please note section 5 iv) must be completed with the relevant course information	
Training Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):	
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  6)ii) Flight instructor variation (other)	Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Silli Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f	Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signiture of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signiture of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signiture of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Trai	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Silli Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f	Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Siji) Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) CPL	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  6)ii) Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Sili) Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.Fl(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.Fl(e) CPL  Signature of Instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  6)ii) Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signit Flight instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.90S.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.90S.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.KI(1) MPL	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.KI(1) MPL  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hours of flight time as a pilot in aeropla	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date or the following:  nes, including at least 200 hours of flight instruction  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.90S.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.90S.FI(e) CPL  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.90S.FI(a) MPL  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hours of flight time as a pilot in aeropla Signature of instructor:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date or the following:  nes, including at least 200 hours of flight instruction  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Instructor variation (other)  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Signature of Instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905 (k)(1) MPL  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hours of flight time as a pilot in aeropla Signature of Instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date or the following:  nes, including at least 200 hours of flight instruction  Date
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL fextend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(c) CPL  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL fextend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.KI(1) MPL  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hours of flight time as a pilot in aeropla  Signature of instructor:  I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL fextend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:  FCL.905.KI(2) MPL  I certify the pilot holds a multi-engine aeroplane IR and the privilege to instruct for an IR  And	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL-905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL-905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL-905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):    Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:   Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:   Certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL f Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:   FCL.905.Fi(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft   FCL.905.Fi(e) CPL	To be completed by the Instructor or the following:  FCL.90S.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI  Date  Date  or the following:  Date  Date  Or the following:  Date  Or the following:

CAA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certificate in Accordance with Part-FCL – Issue 1 - April 2022

AASO18 Instructor	Training Course Completi	on Certificate in Accord	ance with Part_FC - Is	sue 1 - April 2022

FCL.905.CRI(a) Banner Towing FCL.905.CRI(a) Glider Towing FCL.905.CRI(a) Aerobatic

FCL.905.CRI(ba) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot (please specify class or type):

I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:

FCL.905.FI(g) Banner Towing

FCL.910.TRI(a) FSTD FCL.910.TRI(a) Line Flying (LIFUS) FCL.910.TR (b) Aircraft

FCL.905.FI(f) Night

6)iii) TRI variation

Date of demonstration flight: Name of Instructor:

Competent Authority issuing Instructor's Certificate: .....

FCL.910.TRI(b)/(c) (please specify type): ....

FCL.910(c)(2) TRISPH to MPH

FCL.905.SFI(b) (SPHPA) SP to MP

FCL.910.SFI (please specify type): ......

Training Provider Details:

FCL.910. MCCI (please specify type): ....

Training Provider Details:

FCL.905.CRI (Please specify class or type): ...

Date of demonstration/assessment flight: ....

Signature of Instructor/Examiner....

6)v) MCCI variation

6)vi) CRI variation

Page 3

Training Provider Details:

FCL.905.TRI(2) FCL.905.TRI(3) (SPH PA) SP to MP

Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): ......

Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):.....

Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): ...

Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): ....

Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory): ......

Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory: ...

Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): ...

Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory): ....

Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:

Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):

Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):

Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:

FCL 905.FI(g) Glider Towing

I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges of TRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:

FCL.910.TRI(a) Aircraft Takeoffs and Landings only

I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges of SFI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:

I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges of MCCI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:

I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges of CRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:

FCL.905.FI(g) Aerobatic

To be completed by the Training Provider

..... ATO number (if applicable): .....

.. ATO number (if applicable): ....

. ATO number (if applicable): ...

Instructor/Examiner reference number

Instructor Reference Number:

6)vii	i) IRI variation					To be completed by the Training Provid	er
I cer	tify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the	e variation requirement(s) to e	xtend	privileges of IRI	in acco	rdance with Part-FCL for the following:	
FCL.	905.IRI(b) (upgrade to MPL)	FCL.915.IRI(a) (adding ME pr Note: Must also complete se	_			FCL.915.IRI(b) (adding ME privileges in helicopters)  Note: Must also complete section 5(iv)	
Trair	ning Provider Details:						
Nam	ne of Approved Training Organisation (ATO	) (if applicable):				ATO number (if applicable):	
1	petent Authority issuing approval (if applie						
Nam	ne of Head of Training (or authorised signal	tory ):					
Sign	ature of Head of Training or authorised sig	gnatory:				Date	
e)wii	ii) Mountain Rating Instructor variation					To be completed by the Training Pro	ovido
	tify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the	a variation requirement(s) to a	vtond	privilages in acc	ord an c		ovide
	930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (who		xtenu	privileges iii acc	ordano	e with Participation the following.	
	930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skis	_					
	930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (who						
_	ning Provider Details:	eels and skis)					
		W (if applicable):				ATO number (if applicable):	
I	petent Authority issuing approval (if applie						
Nam	ne of Head of Training (or authorised signat	tory ):					
Sign	ature of Head of Training or authorised sig	anatory:				Date	
3611	attare of ricad of Training of actionsed sig	, natory .				Determination	
7) 0	bservation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co	co-Operation Instructor (A/H/	PL)			To be completed by the Examiner	,
FST	Qualification Number:			Aircraft	Repres	sented:	
Date	:: Sta	art time:		Finish time		Duration:	
	Assessmen	nt				Remarks	
a)	Prepare Resources						
b)	Create a climate conducive to learning	B					
c)	Present knowledge						
d)	Integrate threat and Error management	nt (TEM) and crew resource					
e)	Manage time to achieve training object	ctives					
f)	Facilitate learning						
g)	Assess trainee performance						
h)	Monitor and review progress						
i)	Evaluate training sessions						
j)	Report outcome						
Initia Mult Mult Mult	al Authorisation Revalidation/Rer ti-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A) ti-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H) ti-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)	ICCI and / or Part-FCL940.MCC				ruction under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in ued with the following authorisation.	
Exar	miner Details						
	ne of Examiner:petent Authority issuing Examiner's Certifi	ficate:				Examiner reference number:	
Г							
Sign	ature of Examiner:					Date	

CAA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certificate in Accordance with Part-FCL – Issue 1 - April 2022

# SRG 1169: Examiner's Record - FI(R)/FI/CRI/IRI/FIC Authorisation Test/Check

This form is used by the examiner for recording of an AOC for an instructor. It is a useful guide to the instructor as it shows what will be tested during the AoC.

**Sections 1-2:** Self-explanatory.

**Section 3:** Filled out by the ATO.

**Sections 4 & 5:** Self-explanatory.

# Examiner's Record - FI(R)/FI/CRI/IRI/FIC Authorisation Test/Check Schedules - Aeroplane

Please complete this form online (preferred method) then print, sign and submit as instructed. Alternatively, print, then complete in BLOCK CAPITALS using black or dark blue ink.



To be completed by the Applicant

Unique No. (to be completed by CAA)

Please read attached Guidance Notes before completing this form.

#### FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT

1. Applicant Details

Surname.

It is an offence under Article 256 of the Air Navigation Order 2016 to make, with intent to deceive, any false representation for the purpose of procuring the grant, issue, renewal or variation of any certificate, licence, approval, permission or other document. This offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine up to £5000, and on conviction on indictment with an unlimited fine or up to two years imprisonment or both.

Forename(s).

CAA reference number:			
2. Test/Check Details			To be completed by the Applicant
Type of Test:		Locati	ion: Date:
A/C or STD reg & type:			Off blocks: On blocks:
A/C or STD reg & type:			Off blocks: On blocks:
Type (including variants):			
FSTD Identification Number of simulator use	ed (which n	nust b	e approved in accordance with Commission Regulation (EU)
Competent Authority issuing Qualification	Certificate	for the	simulator:
Date flying training complete:			
SECTION 1: Theoretical Knowledge	Pass	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
Long Briefing Title			
a. Air law			
b. Aircraft general knowledge			
<ul> <li>Flight performance and planning</li> </ul>			
d. Human performance and limitations			
e. Meteorology			
f. Navigation			
g. Operational procedures			
h. Principles of flight			

Fail

Observations/Reasons for Failure

g. Student	participation
Form SRG 1169	Issue 04 August 2016

f. Use of model and aids

SECTION 2: Pre Flight Briefing

a. Visual presentation and content
 b. Technical accuracy
 c. Clarity of explanation
 d. Clarity of speech

e. Instructional technique including TEM/

4 copies required. Copies of the report shall be submitted to (1) The Applicant (2) The Applicant's Competent Authority (3) The Examiner (4) The Examiner's Competent Authority (if different)

_		_
Page 1	1 of	-3

SECTION 3: Flight	Pass	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
a. Arrangement of demonstration			
<ul> <li>b. Synchronising of speech/demo</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>c. Assessment and correction of student faults</li> </ul>			
d. Aeroplane handling			
e. Instructional technique			
f. General airmanship/safety	$\overline{}$		
g. Positioning and use of airspace			
h. Risk assessment including TEM/CRM	$\overline{}$		
Main Exercise Title and No.			
i			
i			
SECTION 4: Mandatory Exercises and other exercises at Examiner's discretion	Pass	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
a. Spin avoidance (SE aeroplane)			
b. Safety module			
<ul> <li>c. Take-off and climb, engine failure after take-off (SE aeroplane)</li> </ul>			
d. Approach, landing, missed approach			
e. Forced landing without power (SE aeroplane)			
Additional exercises Title and No.			
f			
g			
SECTION 5: Multi engine (Aeroplane) - may be conducted in FNPT 2 or Simulator	Pass	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
<ul> <li>a. Engine failure (simulated) after take-off or on go-around</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Asymmetric approach and go-around</li> </ul>			
c. Asymmetric approach and landing			
SECTION 6: Instrument Exercises - give exercise Title and No. in space provided	Pass	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
a. Basic instrument flight			]
b. Applied instrument flight			1
c. Instrument approach			]
d. Limited panel and unusual attitudes			
SECTION 7: Post Flight Debriefing	Pas	Fail	Observations/Reasons for Failure
a. Visual presentation and content			
b. Technical accuracy			
c. Clarity of explanation			
d. Clarity of Speech			
e. Instructional technique and facilitation			
f Llee of model and aide			7

g. Student participation

Form SRG 1169 Issue 04 August 2016

Approved Training Organisation (ATO):
Competent Authority issuing approval:
Head of Training (block capitals):
Signature (Head of Training): Date:
PLEASE REFER TO FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT ON PAGE 1
4. RESULT
Tick appropriate box
Pass Partial Partial
Retest Requirement: Rating Revalidated Until (if applicable):
I have received information from the applicant regarding their experience and instruction and certify that this complies with the requirements of EASA Part-FCL.
I have assessed the ICAO English Language Proficiency of the Applicant at Level 6: Yes No* Not Assessed
(*I have advised the Applicant to complete Form SRG 1199 and be assessed by an appropriate organisation, see CAP 804, Section 4, Part M.) Assessment is not required if Applicant holds Level 6.
Examiner's Name (block capitals): Examiners Number:
Authorising Competent Authority:
Signature (Examiner):
PLEASE REFER TO FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT ON PAGE 1
5. TEST, CHECKS AND ASSESSMENTS OF COMPETENCE - NOTICE OF FAILURE  To be completed by examiner
You are hereby notified that you have failed the for the following reasons:
In accordance with Part FCL an Approved Training Organisation shall determine and deliver the required refresher/ remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of competence.
remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of
remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of competence.  Minimum training recommended by the Examiner:  I understand that I have failed the items notified above.
remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of competence.  Minimum training recommended by the Examiner:
remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of competence.  Minimum training recommended by the Examiner:  I understand that I have failed the items notified above.  I understand that I may not exercise the privileges of my
remedial training prior to the applicant reattempting the skill test, proficiency check or assessment of competence. The applicant must provide evidence of this training to the examiner who conducts the next test, check or assessment of competence.  Minimum training recommended by the Examiner:  I understand that I have failed the items notified above.  I understand that I may not exercise the privileges of my

properly conducted. In order to succeed you will have to satisfy the Authority that the examination or test was not properly conducted. Mere dissatisfaction with the result is not sufficient reason for appeal.

Form SRG 1169 Issue 04 August 2016

# SRG 2159 Application for the issue, renewal, revalidation or variation of an instructor certificate (on-line form)

Below is a screen-shot of what can be applied for using this on-line form.

# APPLICATION - VARIATION (FI)

Do <u>not</u> use the browser back butte	on, as it will restart the form and lose of any unsaved form data. Use the forms "Continue" and "Ba Fields marks
Application	Please select the privileges you are applying for: *
	Aeroplanes
	$\hfill \Box$ FCL.905.FI (c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot
	☐ FCL.905.FI(g) Aerobatic
	☐ FCL.905.FI(g) Banner Towing
	☐ FCL.905.FI(g) Glider Towing
	☐ FCL.905.FI(h) IR(R)
	☐ FCL.905(k)(1) MPL
	☐ FCL.905(k)(2) MPL
	☐ FCL.945 Obligations for Instructors
	☐ Removal of LAPL only restriction
	Aeroplanes and/or helicopters
	☐ FCL.905.FI(e) CPL
	☐ FCL.905.FI(f) Night
	☐ FCL.905.FI(h) IR
	☐ FCL.905.FI(i) SPA ME
	☐ FCL.905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI or MI
	☐ FCL.910.FI Removal of Supervisory Restriction

# **Appendix 10: Typical Instructor Assessments of Competence**

# **A Typical IRI AoC**

Date of Test: 16 Jan 18. Examiner: Zahural Islam Aircraft: Pa28R G-CBZR

This was a combined FI revalidation and the addition of IRI privileges. The subjects chosen for the test by the examiner were as follows:

Islam arrived 30 mins late and gave a 5 minute brief on how the exam would be conducted. He explained that he didn't want to see a perfectly flown ILS, but rather be taught how to correct errors from both the LLZ and the GS.

The weather on the day was good visibility with scattered cloud at 3500'. There was a strong wind at 2000' of 280/40.

I gave the briefing for the air exercise, which lasted about 25 minutes with a few questions being asked by Islam, and one or 2 teaching points being clarified.

I had booked 2 ILS approaches at Oxford, but as luck would have it, Farnborough allowed us to do an ILS there.

Islam carried out the start up, but asked me to taxi out and do the power checks. After the power checks, he asked me to teach him the take-off, which I did.

Shortly after take-off I called Farnborough to ask for an ILS which was granted with an immediate vector for ILS 24. I gave Islam control and asked him to follow the vectors and maintain 2400'. I did the radio and demonstrated how to set up and ident the navaids.

Once on base leg, I took control and showed how to intercept the localizer, then how to descend on the ILS. I deliberately got both high and low on the GS and showed how to recover. I then deviated from the LLZ and showed how to recover.

After the missed approach, we headed out to the NW. I was asked to teach tracking, so I taught tracking inbound to CPT VOR. I pointed straight at the beacon, and showed the effect the wind was having. Then laid off 20 degrees of drift and showed the bar now central.

Then I was asked to teach a climb. Islam then practised without mistakes.

Then I was asked to teach timed compass turns with no DI. I did this, then Islam practised.

I was then asked to introduce the concept of instrument flying as though it was the student's very first time in IMC. I got him to close his eyes and tried to disorient him. However, he was able to use the bright sun to stay aware of his orientation. He demonstrated a better method. To get the student to close his eyes and try to maintain straight and level for some time, until things go wrong!

I was asked to teach 2 stalls as an introduction to stalling. One clean to full stall, the other with full flap.

As this was a regular FI renewal combined with an IRI test, I was then asked to teach a PFL. On return to Blackbushe I was asked to teach a flapless approach and landing.

Back in the briefing room I was not asked for my lecture, and was instead asked a few technical questions.

- 1: How is the landing gear powered in the Arrow?
- 2: What would you do if one main wheel failed to extend?

# **Typical IRI Theoretical Knowledge Questions**

- 1: Show with the use of a diagram how an ASI and VSI work.
- 2: State the properties of a gyroscope. Show how they are used in the principles of operation of the aircraft gyroscopic instruments.
- 3: What are the Instrument Flight Rules?
- 4: Can you fly IFR without an IR? Discuss.
- 5: Describe the principles of operation of the following navigation systems: VOR, ILS, DME, Radar.
- 6: May a pilot descend below the DA during an ILS approach? Under what 2 circumstances?
- 7: How does range affect VHF transmissions? What other factors can affect? Why can I ident WCO but not OCK on the ground at EGLK?
- 8: What classes of airspace are there in the UK? What class is the Heathrow CTR and what must I do to enter. What does that class of airspace mean?
- 9: State the pre course requirements for an IMC Rating. For an IR.
- 10: State the content of each course above in terms of hours flown and syllabus.
- 11: State the revalidation and renewal requirements for an IMC Rating and an IR.
- 12: State the privileges and restrictions of a UK IMC Rating.
- 13: What part of the frequency spectrum do the following navigation aids use: NDB, VOR, ILS?

# **Advice to Applicants for a standalone IRI AoC**

CAA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certificate in Accordance with Part-FCL

1. Have the necessary paperwork signed and ready: **SRG 5018** (Course completion certificate, see below) & **SRG 1169** (Examiner's Report). **Note:** Both of these forms require a signature from the head of training of the ATO.

	ive, any false representation for the purpose of procuring the grant, issue, renewal o offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine and on conviction on indictmen
GUIDANCE NOTES	
GUIDANCE NOTE 1: Authorised signatories	
An authorised signatory acts as a representative of the Head of Training, authori training has been conducted by the Approved Training Organisation (ATO). The	ised by the Head of Training or through approved procedures to confirm that the state ATO must maintain a record of those so authorized.
GUIDANCE NOTE 2: Which sections of the course completion to You are only required to complete and print the sections relevant to your applic	
Application applied for	Sections to be fully completed
I initial issue	1, 2, 3, 5
I/CRI/IRI variation	FI - 1, 6(i) or 6(ii) / CRI - 1, 6(vi) / IRI - 1, 6 (vii)
I/CRI/IRI rene wal or revalidation	1, 5(v), 5(vi)
RI/IRI/FTI initial issue	1, 2, 5(i), 5(ii), 5(iii), 5(iv)
ACCI initial issue or renewal	1, 4, 7
ACCI revalidation	1,7
MCCI variation	1, 6(v), 7 1, 5(v)
TI revailed to the second seco	1, 5(v)
Mountain rating instructor initial issue	1, 2, 3, 5
'RI / SFI / STI initial issue	1, 2, 5
'RI / SFI renewal	1, 2, 5
RI / SFI revalidation	1,5
TRI / SFI variation	1, 2, 6
TI renewal	1,5
1. APPLICANT DETAILS	To be completed by the Training Provider
CAA Personal Reference number (if known): 123456A	Date of Birth:01/05/1997
Fitle: Ms Forename(s): Ellie	Surname: Vaytor
This application is for (please select all that apply): Initial issue X Renewal	Revalidation Variation
ins application is for (please select all that apply): Initial issue	Revalidation
2. PRE-REQUISITES	To be completed by the Training Provide
certify that (name) .Ellie Vaytor h	as met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s))IRI(A)
further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they have	
The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (please p 800 hours IFR of which 400 hours in aeroplanes.	rovide a summary of total nours as per the requirements in the regulation):
ood nourd in K of Willott 400 nourd in acrophanes.	
Fraining Provider Details:	1 1 1 mg 1 2 mg 1 1 mg 1
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Pennage	Flying School ATO number (if applicable): 6666
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory): A Vulture	
Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date: 24/04/2023
3. Filg Mountain Rating Instructor (FI/MI) Pre-Entry Flight Test	To be completed by the Industrial
confirm the pilot has satisfactoring completed a pre-entry flight test on (date):	
recommended the pilot for the specified course (selection.). Flight Instructor (	(FI) Mountain Rating in a ructor (MI)
	(Mi) Mountain Bating Harrictor (Mi)
recommended the pilot for the specified course (select one) - Slight Instructor ( Name of FI/MI who conducted the flight test:	FI) Mountain Bating wordctor (MI) hority issuing certificate:

4. IVICE: Course Instructor (if applicable)	To be completed by the Training To
can confirm that I have received the pre-entry requirements alongside the applicant'	
entry requirements and FCL.930.MCCraz, 20 and/or FCL.940.MCCI (where appropria	te) and therefore propose that the apparant proceed to formal observation
CAA or a nominated deputy.  Training Provider Details:	The same of the sa
A STATE OF THE STA	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable) :
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable)	
Name of Head of Training for sentrised signatory):	
Signatory:	Date
5. TRAINING COURSE DETAILS	To be completed by the Training Provider
5)i) Theoretical knowledge	To be completed by the Training Provider
10 hours of theoretical knowledge (TK) instruction	-
The applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one): Full TK training	Reduced TK training Not applicable
The applicant has completed reduced course of TK training on the basis of: (if applicable	The state of the s
The applicant has completed reduced course of TK training on the basis of: (if applicable	<u>!</u>
i)ii) Teaching and learning	To be completed by the Training Provi
25 hours of teaching and learning completed	
The applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full teaching and learning X	Reduced teaching and learning Not applicable (exempt)
The applicant has completed a reduced course of teaching and learning in accordance w	
the applicant has completed a reduced course of teaching and learning in accordance w	ntil PCL.919(c)(1) on the bass or, (il applicable)
i)iii) Technical training (IRI, CRI initial issue)	To be completed by the Training Provi
The applicant has satisfactorily completed10	pretical training
S)iv) Flight training	To be completed by the Training Provi
en e	
confirm the pilot has satisfactorily completed an approved course of training in accorda	
i) FI(A) FI(H) FI(AS) FCL. 900C FI(A)	FCL.900C FI(H)
ii) Class Rating Instructor CRI SE ME	and the same of th
iii) Instrument Rating Instructor IRI(A) X IRI(H)	IRI (AS)
iv) Flight Test Instructor	
v) Mountain Rating Instructor (FCL.930.MI(a))	
vi) Type Rating Instructor TRI(A) (Please specify type):	
vii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(H) (Please specify type):	
nontraction of the contraction o	
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):	
nontraction of the contraction o	
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty	
viii)     Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):       k)     Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL 725(e) (Please specify ty       x)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):	pe)
viii)         Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):           ix)         Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty           x)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):           xi)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA)         (MPA)         (H)	pe)
viii)     Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):       k)     Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL725(e) (Please specify ty       x)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):	pe)
viii)         Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):           ix)         Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL-725(e) (Please specify ty           x)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):           xi)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA)           xii)         Synthetic Training Instructor STI	pe)
viii)         Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):           ix)         Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty           x)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):           xi)         Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA)         (MPA)         (H)           xii)         Synthetic Training Instructor STI A         H         H	Pe)
viii)     Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):       ix)     Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL 725(e) (Please specify ty       x)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):       xi)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA)     (MPA)     (H)       xii)     Synthetic Training Instructor STI     A     H	pe)
viii)     Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):       ix)     Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify type):       x)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):       xi)     Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (H) (SPA) (MPA) (H) (SPA) (MPA) (H) (SPA) (MPA) (MPA	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  x) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify type):  x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  xi) Synthetic Flight instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (E) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (M	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  x) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify type):  x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  xi) Synthetic Flight instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (E) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (H) (MPA) (M	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  x) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL725(e) (Please specify type):  x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  xi) Synthetic Flight instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (E) (SPA) (MPA) (MPA) (H) (E) (SPA) (MPA)	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL-725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  ixi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) ixi) Synthetic Training Instructor STI A H  course start date: 12/04/2023 Course end date: 20/04/2  the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Reduction	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  ix) Synthetic Flight instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) xii) Synthetic Training Instructor STI A H  course start date: 12/04/2023 Course end date: 20/04/2  the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red. the applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of; (if applications of the course consisted of 10 hours of flight instruction of which 0	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type): xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) xii) Synthetic Training Instructor STI A H  course start date: 12/04/2023 Course end date: 20/04/2  the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red. the applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (if applic	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  Type Rating Instructor Insued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type): xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) xii) Synthetic Training Instructor STI (SPA) (MPA) (H) course start date: 12/04/2023 (Course end date: 20/04/2 he applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red. he applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (If applic	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type): xii) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) xiii) Synthetic Training Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) course start date: 12/04/2023 (Course end date: 20/04/2 the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Reduction applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (If application the course consisted of 10 (Instruction of which (Instruction of w	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL-725(e) (Please specify type):  x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H)  xii) Synthetic Fright Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H)  course start date: 12/04/2023 (Course end date: 20/04/2  the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red.  the applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (if applic  the course consisted of 10 hours of flight instruction of which 0  STD identification number of simulator used (which must be issued in accordance with completed Authority issuing qualification certificate for the simulator:   Training Provider Details:	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  k) Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type): xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (H) xii) Synthetic Training Instructor STI A H  Course start date: 12/04/2023 Course end date: 20/04/2  The applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red. The applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (if applications of the course consisted of 10 hours of flight instruction of which 0.  STD Identification number of simulator used (which must be issued in accordance with competent Authority issuing qualification certificate for the simulator: Irraining Provider Details:  Variety of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Pennage Flyir	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  ix) Type Rating Instructor Ssued in accordance with FCL 725(e) (Please specify type):  x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):  xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H)  course start date: 12/04/2023 (MPA)  the applicant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training X Red. (he applicant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (If applicable) (MPA)  the course consisted of 10 (MPA) (MPA) (MPA) (MPA) (MPA)  STD identification number of simulator used (which must be issued in accordance with completent Authority issuing qualification certificate for the simulator:  raining Provider Details:  lame of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable) (MPE)	pe)
viii) Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):  type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify ty x) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type): xi) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (H) xii) Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H) (H	pe)

4024504	
Applicant's CAA Personal Reference number: 123456A	To be completed by the Training Provider
I confirm the pilot has so, foctorily completed the instructor refresher training course on	
For the revalidation or renewal of an instructor Certificate in accordance with P	
Training Provider Details	arcree
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO): (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):	ATO liamber (ii applicable).
Name of Head of Training (or authorise) (analory):	
Name of Head of Halling (of authorities arghatory).	
Stanture (Head of Training):	Date:
5)vi, tructor revalidation/renewal information	To be completed by the Examiner
I can confirm that the pilot. The met the requirements of Part-FCL for the revalidation/renewal of t	the following Instructor:
FI(A) FI(H) FI(As) CRI IRI SFI	STI TRI MCCI MI
The Certificate of Revalidation has been signed and the rating/certificate its valid until (date)	
Examiner's Name:  Competent Authority issuing Examiner' Competent Authority issuing Examiner Competent	Examin 's Number:
Competent Authority Issuing Examinate Certificate:	
Sign vare (Examiner):	Date:
or Craining Course/Information Details	To be completed by the Training Provide
6)i) Flight instructor variation (course)	
I certify that the pilot has saus. Storily met the variation hours requirement(s) in accordance with	Part-FCL for the following:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905.FI(h) IR FCL.905.FI(i) SPA ME	
Please note section 5 iv) must be completed with the relevant course information	
Training Provider Details:	The state of the s
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicate):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (ifpncable) :	
Name of Head of Training (e-authorised signatory):	
albert Watercreek W. in Street W.	
carature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
OF Flight instructor variation (other)	To be completed by the Instructor
I certify but the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-	
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	rector the following.
FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft  FCL.905.FI(e) Cl	PL FCL.905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI OF MI
Tec.303.1(c) Tring multi-to-eperations on a single processing.	Telesosi ilji i ji
Signature of Instructor:	Date
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met tin variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-F	FCL for the following:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905(k)(1) MPL	
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hours of flight time as a pilot in aer,	anes, including at least 200 hours of flight instruction
	2 11 2 11 11 2 11 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 1
Signature of Instructor:	Date
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-	FCL for the following:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905(k)(2) MPL	
	and
I confirm the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 1500 hours of flight time in multi-crew ope	
Is already an FI qualified to instruct on ATPL yor CPL(A)/IR integrated courses and has completed	a structured course consisting of the following training :
MCC qualification  Observation of five sessions of high instruction in Phase 3 of an MPL course	
Observation of five sessions of flight instruction in Phase 3 of an MPL course  Observation of five session of flight instruction in Phase 4 of an MPL course	
Observation of the operator recurrent line-oriented flight training sessions	
The content of the MCCI course	
gnature of Instructor:	Date

Applicant's CAA Personal Reference number: 123456A	
Cerum, that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with	
FCL.905.FI(f) Night   FCL.905.FI(g) Banner Towing   FCL.905.FI(g) Glider To	owing FCL.905.FI(g) Aerobatic
Date of demonstration flight:	
Name of Instructor:	Instructor Reference Number:
Competent Authority issuing Instructor's Certificator	
Gree of Instructor:	Date
bjm) TRI variation	To be completed by the Training Provide
I certify that the print has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privilege	es of TRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
FCL.905.TRI(2) FCL.905.TRI(3) (SPHPA) SP to MP	
FCL.910.TRI(b)/(c) (please specify type):	
FCL.910.TRI(a) FSTD FCL.910.TRI(a) Line Flying (LIFUs) FCL.910.TRI(b) Aircr	aft
FCL.910(c)(2) TRI SPH to MPH FCL.910.TRI(a) Aircraft Takeoffs and Landing	
Training Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applies one):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if ppicable):	
Name of Head of Training touthorised signatory):	
Circ. Long of Head of Training or outherland signature	Date
Sarature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
o, SFI variation	To be completed by the Training Provider
I certify that the pilot as satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privilege	es of SFI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following
FCL.905.SFI(b) (SPHPA) SP to MP	
FCL.910.SFI (please specify type):	
Training Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable)	y
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
6jvj MCCL variation	To be completed by the Training Product
I certify that the pilot nastisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privilege	es of MCCI in accordance with Part-FCL for the foll wing:
FCL.910.MCCI (please specify type):	
Training Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable) :	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
Since stare of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
6)V) Characteristics	
	To be completed by the Training Provider
I certify that the pilot hasirfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privilege	is of CRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
FCL.905.CRI (Please specify class or type):	70V-1 A
	CRI(a) Acceptance
FCL.905. CRI (ba) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot (please specify classes)	
Date of demonstration/assessment flight:	
Name of Instructor/Examiner	Instructor/Examiner reterange number
Sign size of Instructor/Examiner	Date
are or instructor/examiner	Date

certify that the pilot: atisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to exter CL.905.IRI(b) (upgrade to MPL) CL.915.IRI(a) (adding ME privile	To be completed by the Training Provider
FCL.905.IRI(b) (upgrade to MPL) FCL.915.IRI(a) (adding ME privile	
	end privileges of IRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
Note:	
Fraining Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable)	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory ):	
Senature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
Wountain Rating Instructor variation	To be completed by the Training Post
certify that the price has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to exten	
CL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (wheels)	
FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skis)	
CL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (wheels and skis)	
Fraining Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applied see)	
Name of Head of Training (or a thorised signatory ):	
Gnature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)	To be completed by the Examiner
STD Q: alification Number:	Aircraft Represented:
Date: Start time:	Finish time: Duration:
Assessment	Remarks
Prepare Resources	
ij Prepare resource	
c) Create a climate conducts to learning	
e) Present knowledge	
i) Integrate threat and Error management (EM) and crew resource management	
e) Manage time to achieve training objectives	
) Facilitate learning	
s) Assess trainee performance	
n) Monitor and review progress	1
Evaluate training sessions  Report outcome	+
confirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above had conducted at least 3 accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and for Part-FCL.940.MCCI are	3 hours of flight / MCC instruction under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in
necodance with rate-religion, rate-religion, meet all of rate-religion and	no should dietelore be assed with the following authorisation.
nitial Authorisation Revalidation/Benewal Variation	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor	
Subi Const Co Opposition lands of (14)	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Astructor (PL)	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exaggner:	Examiner reference number:
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Astructor (PL)	Examiner reference number:

2. Make sure the aircraft is available and ready. Check weather minima.

- 3. Make sure your long briefing is ready and all visual aids are on hand eg aircraft model.
- 4. Make sure you have a briefing room available for several hours.

AA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certificate in Accordance with Part-FCL – Issue 1 - April 2022

5. Make sure your theoretical knowledge is good. Some examiners will go into great detail, other less so. See Standards Document 10.

Page 5

# Advice to Applicants for an FI(h) AoC

1. Have the necessary paperwork signed and ready: **SRG 5018** (Course completion certificate, see below) & **SRG 1169** (Examiner's Report). **Note:** Both of these forms require a signature from the head of training of the ATO.

CAA5018 Instructor Training Course Completion Certifica	
This form is intended for use in the provision of evidence in support of an app Once completed the form should be scanned or photographed and uploaded	
FALSE REPRESENTATION STATEMENT It is an offence under the UK Air Navigation Order to make, with intent to de	eceive, any false representation for the purpose of procuring the grant, issue, renewal or this offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine and on conviction on indictment
GUIDANCE NOTES	
GUIDANCE NOTE 1: Authorised signatories	
An authorised signatory acts as a representative of the Head of Training, authorising has been conducted by the Approved Training Organisation (ATO). T	norised by the Head of Training or through approved procedures to confirm that the stated he ATO must maintain a record of those so authorized.
GUIDANCE NOTE 2: Which sections of the course completion You are only required to complete and print the sections relevant to your appropriate the sections relevant to your appropriate the sections of the course complete and print the sections relevant to your appropriate the sections of the course complete and print the sections relevant to your appropriate the sections of the course complete and print the sections relevant to your appropriate the sections of the course course course the sections of the course course the sections of the course course course the sections of the course cours	
Application applied for	Sections to be fully completed
FI initial issue	1, 2, 3, 5
FI/CRI/IRI variation	FI- 1, 6(i) or 6(ii) / CRI- 1, 6(vi) / IRI- 1, 6 (vii)
FI/CRI/IRI renewal or revalidation	1, 5(v), 5(vi)
CRI/IRI/FTI initial issue	1, 2, 5(i), 5(ii), 5(iv)
MCCI initial issue or renewal	1, 4, 7
MCCI revalidation MCCI variation	1, 7 1, 6(v), 7
FTI revalidation	1, 5(v), 7
FTI renewal	1, 5(v)
Mountain rating instructor initial issue	1, 2, 3, 5
TRI / SFI / STI initial issue	1, 2, 5
TRI / SFI renewal	1, 2, 5
TRI / SFI revalidation	1,5
TRI / SFI variation	1, 2, 6
STI renewal	1, 5
1. APPLICANT DETAILS	To be completed by the Training Provider
CAA Personal Reference number (if known): 123456A	
Title: MS Forename(s): Ellie	Surname: Vaytor
This application is for (please select all that apply): Initial issue Renew	
This application is for (please select all that apply): Initial issue	al Revalidation Variation X
2 PRE-REQUISITES	To be completed by the Training Provider
2. PRE-REQUISITES	To be completed by the Training Provider
I certify that (name) Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) $FI(A)$ -instrument privileges ve met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes $X$ No $N/A$
I certify that (name) Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges
I certify that (name) Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) $FI(A)$ -instrument privileges ve met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes $X$ No $N/A$
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No NA September 2 No NA September 2 No NA September 3 No NA September 3 No NA September 3 No NA
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details: Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penna	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) $FI(A)$ -instrument privileges ve met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes $X$ No $N/A$
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they hat The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penna Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No NA September 2 No NA September 2 No NA September 3 No NA September 3 No NA September 3 No NA
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they hat The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penna Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s))   FI(A)   instrument   privileges   ve met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes   X   No   N/A     N/A     vertically   N/A   ve
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details: Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penna	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s))   FI(A)   instrument   privileges   ve met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes   X   No   N/A     N/A     vertically   N/A   ve
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha  The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea  200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penne  Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA  Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No NA Seprence of No NA Seprence of No NA Seprence of NA Seprence of NA
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor.  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they hat the following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penne Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA.  Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No NA Separation No NA Separation No NA
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they hat The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): MI Penna Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA.  Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory): A Vulture  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory: Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): MI Penna (ATO) (If applicable): MI Penna (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Signature of Head of Training Organisation (ATO) (If applicable): Sig	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No N/A separate seprovide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation):  age Flying School ATO number (if applicable):
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they hat The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penna Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Confirm the pilot has satisface. I completed a pre-entry flight test on (date I recommended the pilot for the specified course (seec. ) Eight Instruct	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No N/A separate seprovide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation):  age Flying School ATO number (if applicable):
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penne Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  3. ***  *** Mountain Rating Instructor (Filmit) Pre-Entry Flight Test I confirm the pilot has Satisface. ***  ***Completed a pre-entry flight test on (date I recommended the pilot for the specified course (Section 1). Eight instruct Name of Fi/MI who conducted the flight test:	has metthe pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No N/A See provide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation):    Right
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea 200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Penne Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory):  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  3. ***  *** Mountain Rating Instructor (Filmit) Pre-Entry Flight Test I confirm the pilot has Satisface. ***  ***Completed a pre-entry flight test on (date I recommended the pilot for the specified course (Section 1). Eight instruct Name of Fi/MI who conducted the flight test:	has met the pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No N/A separate seprovide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation):  age Flying School ATO number (if applicable):
I certify that (name). Ellie Vaytor  I further certify that I have examined the Pilot's logbook and confirm they ha  The following hours have been flown and verified in the pilot's logbook (plea  200 hours IFR in aeroplanes.  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M. Penne  Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable): J. K. CAA.  Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  1 confirm the pilot has satisface. Completed a pre-entry flight test  I recommended the pilot for the specified course (seece.) Sight Instruct  Name of Fi/MI who conducted the flight test:	has metthe pre-requisites for (certificate(s)) FI(A) instrument privileges we met the pre-requisite hours requirements: Yes X No N/A See provide a summary of total hours as per the requirements in the regulation):    Requirements of the regulation of the regula

4. IVICE	ourse Instructor (if applicable) To be completed by the Training of
can contentry req	rm that I have recogned the pre-entry requirements alongside the applicant's experience and can confirm that the applicant as Part-FCL.915.MCCI ir ements and FCL.930.MCCI as all and/or FCL.940.MCCI (where appropriate) and therefore propose that the pre-entry confirmation observation or minated deputs.
	ominated deputy. rovider Details:
	upproved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):
	t Authority issuing approval (if applicable):
	lead of Training for amorised signatory):
- 500	
Cincort	of Head of Training or authorised signatory:
TRAIN	IG COURSE DETAILS To be completed by the Training Provide
-AMERICAN CONTRACTOR	etical knowledge To be completed by the Training Provide
	hours of theoretical knowledge (TK) instruction
	ant has satisfactorily completed: (select one): Full TK training X Reduced TK training Not applicable
	ant has completed reduced course of TK training on the basis of: (if applicable)
51ii) Teac	ing and learning To be completed by the Training Pro
and the same of the	hours of teaching and learning completed
The appli	ant has satisfactorily completed: (se/ect one) Full teaching and learning Reduced teaching and learning Not applicable (exempt) X and has completed a reduced course of teaching and learning in accordance with FCL915(c)(1) on the basis of: (if applicable) can't holds FI(A).
	nical training (IRI, CRI initial issue)  To be completed by the Training Prov
	ant has satisfactorily completed
	t training To be completed by the Training Prov
	he pilot has satisfactorily completed an approved course of training in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
i)	FI(A)
ii)	Class Rating Instructor CRI SE ME
iii)	Instrument Rating Instructor IRI(A) IRI(H) IRI (AS)
iv)	Flight Test Instructor
v)	Mountain Rating Instructor (FCL.930.MI(a))
V)	
vi)	Type Rating Instructor TRI(A) (Please specify type):
vii)	Type Rating Instructor TRI(H) (Please specify type):
viii)	Type Rating Instructor TRI(PL) (Please specify type):
ix)	Type Rating Instructor issued in accordance with FCL.725(e) (Please specify type)
x)	Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (Please specify type):
xi)	Synthetic Flight Instructor SFI (SPA) (MPA) (H) (PL)
xii)	Synthetic Training instructor STI A H
Course st	rt date: 12/04/2023 Course end date: 23/04/2023
The applic	ant has satisfactorily completed: (select one) Full flight training Reduced flight training X Not applicable
The applie	ant has completed a reduced course of flight training on the basis of: (if applicable)
Appli	cant holds FI(A).
The cours	consisted of hours of flight instruction of which hours instrument ground time in a FTD 2/3 or FNPT I or FNPT II/III or FP.
	ification number of simulator used (which must be issued in accordance with UK Regulation No. 1778/2011)
	t Authority issuing qualification certificate for the simulator:
	rovider Details:
Training F	
Training F	pproved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M. Pennage Flying School ATO number (if applicable): 6666 t Authority issuing approval (if applicable): UK CAA

A	
Applicant's CAA Personal Reference number: 123456A	To be completed by the Training Providence
I confirm the pilot has saw foctorily completed the instructor refresher training course on	(date)
For the revalidation or renewal of an instructor Certificate in accordance with Part-FCL	
Training Provider Details	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO): (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable) ;	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised conatory):	
Gure (Head of Training):	Date:
5)v <sub>1</sub> tor revalidation/renewal information	To be completed by the Examiner
I can confirm that the pilot. The the requirements of Part-FCL for the revalidation/renewal of the following In	
FI(A) FI(H) FI(As) CRI IRI SFI STI	TRI MCCI MI
The Certificate of Revalidation has been signed and the rating/certificate in until (date).	
Examiner's Name: Examiner	'- Number:
Competent Authority issuing Examine Competent Authority issuing Ex	
Sign wire (Examiner):	Date:
6. Training Course/Information Details	To be completed by the Training Provider
6)i) Flight instructor variation (course)	
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation hours requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL for the	he following:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905.FI(h) IR X FCL.905.FI(h) IR(R) FCL.905.FI(i) SPA ME	
Please note section 5 iv) must be completed with the relevant course information	
Training Provider Details:	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): M Pennage Flying School	ATO number (if applicable): 6666
Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable) : UK CAA	
Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory): A Vulture	
	0.410.410.000
Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date 24/04/2023
Flight instructor variation (other)	To be completed by the Instructor
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL for the following	TO A STATE OF THE
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905.FI(c) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot aircraft FCL.905.FI(e) CPL	FCL:905.FI(j) FI, IRI, CRI, STI OWIL
Signature of Instructor:	Date
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met in variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL for the following	lowing:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905(k)(1) MPL	discretization and beautiful to the discretization
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 500 hour of flight time as a pilot in aero, anes, include	ding at least 200 hours of riight instruction
Signature of Instructor:	Date
I certify that the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordance with Part-FCL for the folia	owing:
Extend privileges to flight instructor certificate to include:	
FCL.905(k)(2) MPL	
I certify the pilot holds a multi-engine aeroplane IR and the privilege to instruct for an IR And	
I confirm the pilot has satisfactorily completed at least 1500 hours of flight time in multi-crew operations	or
Is already an FI qualified to instruct on ATPLATOr CPL(A)/IR integrated courses and has completed a structured of MCC qualification	ourse consisting of the following training :
Observation of five sessions of right instruction in Phase 3 of an MPL course	
Observation of five session of flight instruction in Phase 4 of an MPL course	
Observation of fly operator recurrent line-oriented flight training sessions	
The content of the MCCI course	

certin, in the pilot has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) in accordal CL.905.Fi(f) Night   reactOF Fi(g) Banner Towing   FCL.905.Fi(g) 6	
	FCL.905.Fi(g) Aerobatic
ate of demonstration flight:	A CONTRACTOR OF THE STATE OF TH
ame of Instructor:	Instructor Reference Number:
ompetent Authority issuing Instructor's Certificate	
were of Instructor:	Date
- Tare of Historia	DOM:
m, TRI variation	To be completed by the Training Pro
certify that the pullet has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend p	orivileges of TRI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
CL.905.TRI(2) FGC.225.TRI(3) (SPHPA) SP to MP	
CL.910.TRI(b)/(c) (please specify type):	
CL.910.TRI(a) FSTD FCL.910.TRI(a) Line Flying (LIFUs) FCL.910.TRI	b) Aircraft
CL.910(c)(2) TRI SPH to MPH FCL.910.TRI(a) Aircraft Takeoffs and Lar	dine only
raining Provider Details:	
lame of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applies ore):	ATO number (if applicable):
ompetent Authority issuing approval (if a pricable):	
lame of Head of Training to authorised signatory):	
gnature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
400000	
)\SFI variation	To be completed by the Training Pro-
certify that the pilo. has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend	orivileges of SFI in accordance with Part-FCL for the following
CL.905.SFI(b) (SPHPA) SP to MP	
CL.910.SFI (please specify type):	
raining Provider Details:	
lame of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	
ompetent Authority issuing approval (if applicable)	
lame of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):	
acure of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
partitle of flead of flatfilling of authorised signatory.	Date
V, MCCI variation	To be completed by the Training Pro-
certify that the pilot nase tisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend	
CL.910.MCCI (please specify type):	
raining Provider Details:	
ame of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
ompetent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):	
ame of Head of Training (or authorised synatory):	
ion core of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
IVI) Covariation	To be completed by the Training Providence
(VI) C. PATIALION	
pertify that the pilot to Hisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend a	an analysis of the state of the
	Constitution and the second se
CL.905.CRI (Please specify class or type):	1. 905 (RI(a) Acc
	CL 905. CRI(a) Accounts
CL905. CRI (Please specify class or type):  CL905. CRI(a) Banner Towing FCL.905. CRI(a) Glider row. Fi  CL905. CRI(ba) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot (please specify a)	CL905.CRI(a) Accutanc
CL.905. CRI (Please specify class or type):  CL.905. CRI(a) Banner Towing FCL.905. CRI(a) Glider row. F  CL.905. CRI(ba) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot (please specify a)  ate of demonstration/assessment flight:	i ( <sub>1</sub>
CL905. CRI (Please specify class or type):  CL905. CRI(a) Banner Towing FCL.905. CRI(a) Glider row. Fi  CL905. CRI(ba) Flying multi-pilot operations on a single pilot (please specify a)	14)-

Page 3

CCL 955.Ri(N)   Lograde to MPL    CCL 915.Ri(N)   Coding ME privileges of this accordance with Part-RC, for the foligoins   FCL 905.Ri(N)   Lograde to MPL    CCL 915.Ri(N)   Coding ME privileges in accordance with Part-RC, for the foligoins   FCL 905.Ri(N)   Lograde to MPL    RCL 915.Ri(N)   RCL 915	Applicant's CAA Personal Reference number: 123456A	
EC. 956. JBI(b) (upgrade to MPL)  Note: Nitro allo complete section 5(b)  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Name of Head of Training or authorised signatory (:	6Jvn, 101 variation	To be completed by the Training Provider
Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (# applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (# applicable):  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (# applicable):  Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Date  Syn/ Mountain Rating Instructor variation  To be completed by the Training or authorised signatory is a state of the Body or the Variation requirement(s) to extend privileges in accordance with Part-FC. for the billowine:  FCL-930-M(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (Variation)  FCL-930-M(a) Mountain		
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable) Competent Author (it source approval (if applicable) Competent Author (it source applicable) Competent Competent (it source applicable) Competent Competent (it source applicable) Competent (it sourc		
Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicable) Name of Nead of Training or authorised signatory:  Date  7. Mountain Rating instructor variation  To be completed by the Training Po- currity that the Pro- shap satisfactor is met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:  FCL-930. Mi(a) Mountain Rating instructor (sta)s  FCL-930. Mi(a) Mountain Rating instructor (wheels and six)s  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Control of Application (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing frammer's Certificate:  Date:  Start time:  Privation:  ATO number (if applicable):  ATO number (if applicable):  Competer Authority issuing approval (if applicab	Training Provider Details:	
Name of Head of Training or authorised signatory:    Date		ATO number (if applicable):
Date    District of I lead of Training or authorised signatory   Date		
Nountain Rating Instructor variation  To be completed by the Training Part CL.930.M(r) Mountain Rating Instructor (Stables)  FCL.930.M(r) Mountain Rating Instructor (Pill)  FCL.930.M(r) Mou	Name of Head of Training (or automised signatory ):	
Currity that the pine-hax autrifactority met the variation requirement(s) to extend privileges in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:	Stature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
FCL.930.Mi(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skip) FCL.930.Mi(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skip) FCL.930.Mi(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skip) Fraining Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training organisation (ATO) (if applicable): Competent Authority sosing approval (if applicable): Name of Approved Training organisation (ATO) (if applicable): Name of Head of Training (organisation (ATO) (if applicable): Name of Head of Training or authorised signatory:  Date    Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)	oy. "*! Mountain Rating Instructor variation	To be completed by the Training Possition
FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating instructor (sks) FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating instructor (wheels and sks) Training Provider Details: Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable): Name of Head of Training (or aversical signatory):    Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):	I certify that the pinch has satisfactorily met the variation requirement(s) to extend privilege	s in accordance with Part-FCL for the following:
For John Mills Mountain Rating Instructor (wheels and skis)  Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Competent Authority Issuing approval (if applicable):  Name of Head of Training (or authorised signatory):  Date:  Discontinuing Competent Authority (if applicable):  Discontinuing Competent Competent (if applicable):  ATO number (if applicable):  Discontinuing Competent (i	FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (wheels)	
Training Provider Details:  Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Competent Authority issuing approval (if applicable):  Name of Head of Training (or whorised signatory):  Date    Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)	FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (skis)	
Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):  Competent Authority is using approval (if angle Mark 1:  Name of Head of Training for anotherised signatory:  Date  Discoveration Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)  To be completed by the Examiner  Potate:  Start time:  Start time:  Finish time:  Duration:  Assessment  Remarks  Prepare Resoure:  Organisation Conducts to learning  Integrate threat and Error management (EM) and crew resource management  Potate in an Amage time to achieve training objectives  Assess trainee performance  Assess trainee performance  Assess trainee performance  Discoverance with Part-FCL 920, Part-FCL 990,MCCI and for Part-FCL 990,MCCI and should therefore be assued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation   Revalidation/Britewal   Variation   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor [4]   Multi-Crew Co-Operati	FCL.930.MI(a) Mountain Rating Instructor (wheels and skis)	
Competent Authority issuing approval (if another let):  Name of lead of Training (or a increase signatory ):    Competent Authority issuing approval (if another let):	Training Provider Details:	
Name of Head of Training for authorised signatory :    Date	Name of Approved Training Organisation (ATO) (if applicable):	ATO number (if applicable):
Date    Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)   To be completed by the Examiner FSTD Oragin Castion Number:   Aircraft Represented:	Competent Authority issuing approval (if applied to):	
Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)   To be completed by the Examiner	Name of Head of Training (or a morised signatory ):	
Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)   To be completed by the Examiner		
Assessment Represented:    Start time: Finish time: Duration:	Signature of Head of Training or authorised signatory:	Date
Assessment Represented:    Start time: Finish time: Duration:		
Date: Start time: Finish time: Duration:  Assessment Remarks    Prepare Resource	Observation Report Form for Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (A/H/PL)	To be completed by the Examiner
Date: Start time: Finish time: Duration:  Assessment Remarks    Prepare Resource	FORD A HEAVY NAMED IN	tunt tunt tunt tunt tunt tunt tunt tunt
Assessment  Assessment  Remarks  Prepare Resources  Create a climate conductive to learning  Present knowledge  Integrate threat and Error management (EM) and crew resource management  Present knowledge  Integrate threat and Error management (EM) and crew resource management  Present knowledge  Assess trained by the conductive training objectives  Assess trained performance  Assess trained p	The state of the s	
prepare Resource  Discrete a climate conducts to learning  Discrete Resource  Discrete Actimate Conducts to learning  Discrete Resource  Discrete		
b) Create a climate conduct to learning    Present knowledge		Remarks
Present knowledge  d) Integrate threat and Error management (SEM) and crew resource management  e) Manage time to achieve training objectives  facilitate learning  g) Assess trainee performance  h) Monitor and review progress  j) Evaluate training sessions  j) Report outcome  confirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has conducted at least 3 hours of flight / MCC instribution under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in secondance with Part-PCL-920, Part-PCL-930, MCCI and should therefore be asseed with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation   Revalidation/partewal   Variation   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)   Examiner Details  Name of Examiner:   Examiner reference number:	a) Prepare Resource	
Integrate threat and Error management (EM) and crew resource management  in Manage time to achieve training objectives  Manage time to achieve training objectives  Assess trainee performance  Assess trainee performance  Devaluate training sessions  Report outcome  Loorfirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has conducted at least 3 hours of flight / MCC institution under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in accordance with Part-FCL-920, Part-FCL-930, MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/pamewal Variation  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H) Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (FL)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (FL)  Examiner Details  Name of Examiner:  Examiner reference number:  Competess Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	b) Create a climate conductive to learning	
management  manage	c) Present knowledge	
Facilitate learning		
g) Assess trainee performance h) Monitor and review progress l) Evaluate training sessions l) Report outcome l confirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has conducted at least 3 hours of light / McC instruction under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in accordance with Part-PCL-920, Part-PCL-930,MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/psmewal Variation Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (F) Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (F) Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL) Examiner Details  Name of Examiner:  Examiner reference number:  Competers Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	e) Manage time to achieve training objectives	
h) Monitor and review progress  D) Evaluate training sessions  D) Report outcome  Locoffirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has conducted at least 3 hours of flight / MCC instribution under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and should therefore be assued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/Ismewal Variation  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Examiner:  Examiner reference number:  Competion Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	f) Facilitate learning	
Description of the process of the pr	g) Assess trainee performance	
Report outcome  It confirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has conducted at least 3 hours of flight / MCC instruction under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and for Part-FCL.940.MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/periewal Variation Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exagener:  Examiner reference number:  Competion Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	h) Monitor and review progress	
Confirm that the Applicant detailed in Section 1 above has Conducted at least 3 hours of flight / MCC instruction under my supervision and to my satisfaction, in accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and or Part-FCL.940.MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation   Revalidation/pamewal   Variation   Wariation   Revalidation/pamewal   Variation   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#)   Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#L)   Examiner Potalis  Name of Exaginer:   Examiner reference number:   Competitor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:   Examiner reference number:   Competitor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:   Competitor Authority issuing	i) Evaluate training sessions	
Accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and For Part-FCL.940.MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/pmewal Variation  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#I)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (FL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exaginer: Examiner Scentificate:	j) Report outcome	
Accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and For Part-FCL.940.MCCI and should therefore be issued with the following authorisation.  Initial Authorisation Revalidation/pmewal Variation  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#I)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (FL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exaginer: Examiner Scentificate:		
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#]  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#L)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exagener:  Competitor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	accordance with Part-FCL.920, Part-FCL.930.MCCI and for Part-FCL.940.MCCI and should th	erefore be issued with the following authorisation.
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#]  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (#L)  Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exagener:  Competitor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	_ /	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)	Initial Authorisation Revalidation/Benewal Variation	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exagener:  Competion Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:  Examiner reference number:	Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor	
Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (PL)  Examiner Details  Name of Exagener: Examiner reference number:  Competion Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	Multi-Crew Co-Operation Instructor (H)	
Name of Exagener: Examiner reference number: Competitor Authority Issuing Examiner's Certificate:	Multi-Crew Co-Operation Astructor (PL)	
Competgor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	Examiner Details	
Competgor Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	Name of Francier	Examiner reference number:
	Competer Authority issuing Examiner's Certificate:	CASTRIES FEIGURE HUMBER
Speature of Evanger		
	Signature of Examiner:	Date

- 2. Make sure the aircraft is available and ready. Check weather minima.
- 3. Make sure your long briefing is ready and all visual aids are on hand eg aircraft model.
- 4. Make sure you have a briefing room available for several hours.
- 5. Make sure your theoretical knowledge is good. Some examiners will go into great detail, other less so. See Standards Document 10.

# GOOD LUCK!

